

# BREEAM In-Use International

Technical Manual: Residential

SD243 – V6.0.0



Cargo, Baltic Triangle, Liverpool registered against  
BREEAM In-Use International Residential V6

Blank Page

## TERMS AND CONDITIONS

### Disclaimer

This Scheme Document is the property of BRE Global Limited (“Global”) and is made publicly available, and free of charge, for information purposes only. Any testing, assessment, certification or approval activities relating to this Scheme Document (“the Activities”) must be conducted in accordance with Global’s approved processes, where the Activities are undertaken by authorised employees, agents, and associates of the Building Research Establishment Limited (“BRE”), Global or approved Activities providers. Please email [breeam@bregroup.com](mailto:breeam@bregroup.com) if you wish to receive further information as to how to become an approved Activities provider. For the avoidance of doubt, anyone wishing to use or reproduce this Scheme Document to offer testing, assessment, certification or approval services, must apply to Global for the right to offer such services. Global accepts no responsibility for any unauthorised use or distribution by others of this Scheme Document and may take legal action where unauthorised use is discovered.

### Copyright

Save where Global has acknowledged third party-owned sources, the copyright in this Scheme Document is owned by Global. The Scheme Document may be downloaded and reproduced only where:

- the reproduction is for academic and other non-commercial purposes;
- the Scheme Document is reproduced in full; and
- Global’s copyright in the Scheme Document is acknowledged.

Any other use of the Scheme Document shall be subject to specific agreements with Global.

### Trade Marks

“BRE”, “BRE Global”, “BREEAM”, “CEEQUAL”, “HQM”, “SMARTWaste” and “SABRE” are all trademarks, whether registered or unregistered, and are owned by either BRE or BRE Global, and may not be used without written permission from BRE or BRE Global Limited.

### Cover image

Cargo, Baltic Triangle, Liverpool.

Image courtesy of Falconer Chester Hall Architects and Federated Hermes.

© BRE Global Ltd 2020

## Acknowledgement

This manual has been made possible through the continued efforts of many dedicated BRE Group staff members, the BRE Global Limited Governing Body, BREEAM Assessors and those who have responded to our consultation calls and meetings or provided feedback in other ways. BRE Global Limited also extends its gratitude to those who support BREEAM by continuing to specify and apply the method and contribute towards a sustainable built environment.

Uncontrolled copy if printed. Valid on day of printing only.

© BRE Global Ltd 2020

## Table of contents

<b>BREEAM In Use.....</b>	i
<b>TERMS AND CONDITIONS .....</b>	i
Disclaimer.....	i
Copyright.....	i
Trade Marks .....	i
Cover image .....	i
<b>Acknowledgement .....</b>	ii
<b>Table of contents .....</b>	iii
<b>List of tables .....</b>	viii
<b>List of figures .....</b>	ix
<b>What the icons mean .....</b>	1
Category weightings.....	1
Assessment issue credits.....	1
Minimum standards .....	2
<b>About BRE Global Limited .....</b>	4
<b>About this document .....</b>	5
Changes to this BREEAM scheme document .....	5
<b>Introduction to BREEAM .....</b>	6
BREEAM aim and objectives .....	6
Objectives of BREEAM .....	6
The BREEAM schemes .....	7
Trust in the Certification Mark .....	7
<b>BREEAM In-Use International .....</b>	9
The value of data collection .....	10
How to use BREEAM In-Use International .....	11
<b>Scope.....</b>	13
Eligibility criteria.....	13
Asset types that can be assessed.....	14
<b>Scoring and rating of BREEAM In-Use International assessed assets.....</b>	15
BREEAM In-Use International rating benchmarks.....	15
Environmental category weightings .....	15
Minimum standards .....	16
BREEAM assessment issues and credits .....	18
Calculating an asset's BREEAM rating .....	19

<b>BREEAM evidential requirements .....</b>	<b>21</b>
The BREEAM In-Use International Assessor role .....	21
Evidence types .....	22
Evidence principles .....	22
Robustness of evidence .....	24
<b>Building details .....</b>	<b>27</b>
Asset .....	27
Basic building details.....	28
<b>Part 1 Asset Performance .....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Health and Wellbeing.....</b>	<b>33</b>
Hea 01 Daylighting .....	37
Hea 02 Minimising overheating from solar gain.....	40
Hea 03 Internal and external lighting levels .....	42
Hea 04 Lighting control .....	46
Hea 05 Minimising flicker from lighting systems .....	47
Hea 06 View out.....	49
Hea 07 User comfort control, and maintenance .....	51
Hea 08 Ventilation system air intakes and exhausts .....	54
Hea 09 Carbon dioxide sensors.....	57
Hea 10 Carbon monoxide detection .....	59
Hea 11 Indoor and/or outdoor space .....	62
Hea 12 Inclusive design .....	64
Hea 13 Radon risk management .....	69
<b>Energy .....</b>	<b>71</b>
Asset Energy Calculator Guidance .....	75
Ene 01 Building services.....	90
Ene 02 Percentage of mechanical ventilation.....	92
Ene 03 Fabric performance.....	94
Ene 04 Air permeability of the fabric .....	97
Ene 05 Cooling.....	100
Ene 06 Heating .....	103
Ene 07 Internal lighting .....	107
Ene 08 Ventilation .....	110
Ene 09 Water heating .....	112
Ene 10 Demand side management (DSM) capabilities for electricity .....	115
Ene 11 Installed controls.....	118

Ene 12 Local energy performance asset rating .....	121
Ene 13 Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels .....	124
Ene 14 Solar thermal panels.....	126
Ene 15 Monitoring energy uses .....	127
Ene 16 Monitoring of separate units .....	130
Ene 17 External lighting .....	132
Ene 18 Energy efficient lifts.....	135
<b>Transport.....</b>	<b>137</b>
Tra 01 Alternative modes of transport.....	139
Tra 02 Proximity to public transport .....	143
Tra 03 Proximity to amenities.....	145
Tra 04 Cyclist safety.....	148
<b>Water .....</b>	<b>150</b>
Wat 01 Water monitoring .....	153
Wat 02 Water efficient equipment: toilets .....	155
Wat 03 Water efficient equipment: urinals .....	158
Wat 04 Water efficient equipment: taps .....	159
Wat 05 Water efficient equipment: showers and baths .....	161
Wat 06 Water efficient equipment: appliances.....	163
Wat 07 Leak detection system .....	165
Wat 08 Leak prevention .....	167
Wat 09 Isolation valves .....	169
Wat 10 Reducing utility-supplied water consumption .....	171
<b>Resources .....</b>	<b>173</b>
Rsc 01 Condition survey .....	176
Rsc 02 Reuse and recycling facilities .....	179
Rsc 03 Resources inventory .....	184
Rsc 04 Future adaptation.....	187
<b>Resilience.....</b>	<b>188</b>
Rsl 01 Flood risk assessment .....	191
Rsl 02 Surface water run-off impact mitigation .....	194
Rsl 03 Natural hazard risk assessment .....	196
Rsl 04 Durable and resilient features .....	198
Rsl 05 Alarm systems .....	200

<b>Land Use and Ecology.....</b>	<b>202</b>
Lue 01 Planted area.....	204
Lue 02 Ecological features of planted area.....	207
<b>Pollution.....</b>	<b>210</b>
Pol 01 Minimising watercourse pollution .....	214
Pol 02 Chemical storage .....	216
Pol 03 Local air quality .....	218
Pol 04 Global warming potential of refrigerants .....	221
Pol 05 Refrigerant leak detection systems.....	224
<b>Part 2 Management Performance .....</b>	<b>226</b>
<b>Management .....</b>	<b>227</b>
Man 01 Building/Home user guide .....	230
Man 02 Management engagement and feedback .....	232
Man 03 Maintenance policies and procedures .....	235
Man 04 Environmental policies and procedures .....	238
Man 05 Green lease.....	240
<b>Health and Wellbeing.....</b>	<b>241</b>
Hea 14 Thermal comfort .....	244
Hea 15 Smoking policy .....	247
Hea 16 Indoor air quality management.....	249
Hea 17 Acoustic conditions.....	255
Hea 18 Legionella risk management .....	262
Hea 19 Drinking water management .....	266
<b>Energy .....</b>	<b>267</b>
Operational energy calculator guidance .....	270
Ene 19 Energy consumption .....	272
Ene 20 Carbon intensity district heating and cooling .....	277
Ene 21 Renewable energy electricity generated .....	279
Ene 22 Energy audit.....	281
Ene 23 Energy consumption reporting.....	283
Ene 24 Reduction of carbon emissions .....	285
<b>Water .....</b>	<b>288</b>
Wat 11 Water consumption.....	290
Wat 12 Water recycling .....	292
Wat 13 Water consumption reporting .....	294
Wat 14 Water strategy .....	296

<b>Resources .....</b>	<b>298</b>
Rsc 05 Sustainable procurement .....	300
Rsc 06 Optimising resource use, reuse and recycling .....	305
<b>Resilience.....</b>	<b>310</b>
Rsl 06 Emergency plans and climate-related physical risks .....	313
Rsl 07 Climate-related transition risks and opportunities .....	316
Rsl 08 Social risks and opportunities .....	318
Rsl 09 Fire risk management .....	320
Rsl 10 Security risk assessment .....	323
<b>Land Use and Ecology.....</b>	<b>326</b>
Lue 03 Ecology report .....	328
Lue 04 Biodiversity management plan .....	332
<b>Pollution .....</b>	<b>336</b>
Pol 06 Reduction of nighttime light pollution .....	338
Pol 07 Inspection of watercourse pollution prevention features .....	342
Pol 08 Refrigerant replacement .....	344
Pol 09 Contamination from invasive plant species .....	346
Pol 10 Response to pollution incidents .....	348

## List of tables

Table 1: Minimum standards.....	2
Table 2: BREEAM In-Use International environmental categories .....	9
Table 3: Asset types that can be assessed under BREEAM In-Use International Residential .....	14
Table 4: BREEAM In-Use International rating benchmarks.....	15
Table 5: BREEAM In-Use International Residential environmental category weightings.....	16
Table 6: Minimum BREEAM standards by rating level: Asset Performance .....	17
Table 7: Minimum BREEAM standards by rating level: Management Performance .....	17
Table 8: Exemplary level credits .....	18
Table 9: Calculating an asset's BREEAM Rating for Part 1: Asset performance .....	20
Table 10: BREEAM evidence principles .....	23
Table 11: Evidence types.....	24
Table 12: Asset Performance categories, credits available and environmental weightings .....	32
Table 13: Minimum performance requirements for glazed area as a percentage of occupied room area .....	38
Table 14: The components and subcomponents used to determine end use energy consumption ....	76
Table 15: Standard building specification for an individual semi-detached home .....	78
Table 16: Subcomponents, parameters and sources for modelling asset energy performance .....	80
Table 17: Best practice asset specification.....	81
Table 18: Allocation of credits .....	116
Table 19: Allocation of credits .....	120
Table 20: Compliant cycle storage facilities.....	141
Table 21: Baseline figures for white goods .....	164
Table 22: Flood risk zones .....	193
Table 23: Emissions limit for combustion appliance .....	220
Table 24: Common refrigerant types with a low GWP .....	222
Table 25: Management Performance categories, credits available and environmental weightings...	226
Table 26: Number of tests forming a set of tests .....	259
Table 27: Performance standards for ambient noise levels in selected spaces.....	259
Table 28: Performance standards for airborne and impact sound insulation levels .....	259
Table 29: Operational energy performance scale and credits awarded. .....	271
Table 30: Fuel specific guidance is provided below: .....	273
Table 31: Allocation of credits .....	293
Table 32: Waste recording requirements.....	307
Table 33: Obtrusive light limitations for exterior lighting installations and illuminated signs .....	340
Table 34: Environmental lighting zones .....	340

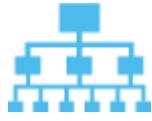
## List of figures

Figure 1: BREEAM certification mark .....	8
Figure 2: The relationship between the standard asset (BIU benchmark) and the assessed asset. ...	77
Figure 3: Schematic of the simplified energy modelling approach for space heating.....	83
Figure 4: Schematic of the simplified energy modelling approach for space cooling .....	86
Figure 5: Example of output - Indicative carbon saving potential .....	89

Blank page

## What the icons mean

Icons have been designed to visually represent some of the information in the technical manual to assist in orientation. These are colour coded to align with the BREEAM environmental category colours.

Category weightings	Assessment issue credits
	

## Category weightings

Within each environmental category summary page, there is an icon which outlines the weighting for that respective category. For example, if the weighting for the category is 15% then the icon will contain the figure 15%.



## Assessment issue credits

For each assessment issue, the icon represents the number of credits available for that issue. For example, if two credits are available for an assessment, the icon will contain the number 2. Where

exemplary credits are available for an assessment issue, these are shown as a star in the top right-hand corner of the assessment issue icons. The number of exemplary credits available is shown within the star.



## Minimum standards

One of seven minimum standard icons is shown along with the assessment issue credit icon. The minimum standard star cluster indicates which BREEAM rating the assessment issue minimum standard applies to.

Table 1: Minimum standards

Ratings with a minimum standard	Icon
No minimum standard	<span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span>
Outstanding	<span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span>
Excellent and Outstanding	<span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span> <span style="color: #808080;">★</span>

Very good, Excellent and Outstanding	★★★★★ ★★★★★ ★★★★★ ★★★☆ ☆☆ ☆
Good, Very good, Excellent and Outstanding	★★★★★ ★★★★★ ★★★★★ ★★★☆ ☆☆ ☆
Pass, Good, Very good, Excellent and Outstanding	★★★★★ ★★★★★ ★★★★★ ★★★☆ ☆☆ ☆
Acceptable, Pass, Good, Very good, Excellent and Outstanding	★★★★★ ★★★★★ ★★★★★ ★★★☆ ☆☆ ☆

## About BRE Global Limited

BRE Global Limited (part of the BRE (Building Research Establishment) Group) is an independent third-party approvals body offering certification of fire, security and sustainability products and services to an international market.

BRE Global Limited's mission is to 'Protect People, Property and the Planet'.

We aim to achieve this by:

1. Researching and writing standards
2. Testing and certification in the areas of fire, electronics, security and sustainability
3. Developing world leading sustainability assessment methods
4. Undertaking research and consultancy for clients and regulators
5. Promulgating standards and knowledge throughout the industry through publications and events
6. Developing and delivering training

BRE Global Limited's product testing and approvals are carried out by recognised experts in our world-renowned testing laboratories.

BRE Global Limited is custodian of a number of world leading brands including:

1. Building Research Establishment's Environmental Assessment Method (BREEAM) - the world's leading environmental assessment method for buildings.
2. CEEQUAL - Sustainability Assessment and Awards Scheme for Civil Engineering, Infrastructure, Landscaping and Public Realm Works.
3. Home Quality Mark- National standard for assessment and certification for new homes in the UK
4. Loss Prevention Certification Board (LPCB) for approval of fire and security products and services.

BRE Global Limited is a trading subsidiary of the BRE Trust, the registered research and education charity which owns the BRE Group. BRE Global is headquartered in the United Kingdom, with operational offices in the US, China and Europe

### Head Office

BRE Global Limited	T +44 (0)333 321 8811
Bucknalls Lane	F +44 (0)1923 664 910
Watford	E <a href="mailto:enquiries@bregroup.com">enquiries@bregroup.com</a>
Hertfordshire	W <a href="http://www.bregroup.com">www.bregroup.com</a>
WD25 9XX	<a href="http://www.greenbooklive.com">www.greenbooklive.com</a>

## About this document

This document is the technical manual for BREEAM In-Use International Residential V6.0.0. It describes an environmental performance standard against which existing, residential buildings can be assessed and achieve a BREEAM In-Use rating.

The Scheme Document and the information detailed within is intended for use by trained, qualified and licensed Assessors in accordance with the procedural and operational requirements of BREEAM (as described in the BREEAM and CSH: Operational Guidance, SD5070, as well as SD096) under the terms and conditions of a BREEAM In-Use licence. This document should be used by non-BREEAM In-Use Assessors for reference purposes only.

## Changes to this BREEAM scheme document

This Scheme Document is subject to revision and can be re-issued from time-to-time by BRE Global Limited. A schedule of the publication date for each issue of this document is provided below.

Scheme Doc.	Issue no.	Date of issue
SD 243	6.0.0 (current)	May 2020

## Introduction to BREEAM

BREEAM is the world's first and leading sustainability assessment and certification scheme for the built environment. It is an international standard that is locally adapted, operated and applied through a network of scheme operators, assessors and industry professionals.

Through its application, BREEAM recognises and reflects the value in higher performing assets and aims to inspire and empower change by rewarding and motivating sustainability across the life cycle of master-planning projects, infrastructure and buildings.

Launched in 1990, to date, BREEAM has been used to certify over 570,000 assessments of buildings across the building life cycle and it is being applied in over 86 countries.

## BREEAM aim and objectives

BREEAM assesses, encourages and rewards environmental, social and economic sustainability throughout the built environment. The BREEAM schemes:

- encourage continuous performance improvement and innovation by setting and assessing against a broad range of scientifically rigorous requirements that go beyond current regulations and practice,
- empower those who own, commission, deliver, manage or use buildings, infrastructure or communities to achieve their sustainability aspirations,
- build confidence and value by providing independent certification that demonstrates the wider benefits to individuals, business, society and the environment.

## Objectives of BREEAM

- To provide market recognition of buildings with a low environmental impact.
- To ensure best environmental practice is incorporated in the planning, design, construction and operation of buildings and the wider built environment.
- To challenge the market to provide innovative, cost effective solutions that minimise the environmental impact of buildings.
- To allow organisations to demonstrate progress towards corporate environmental objectives.

BREEAM is developed and operated to meet the following underlying principles:

- Ensure environmental quality through an accessible, holistic and balanced measure of environmental impacts.
- Use quantified measures for determining environmental quality.
- Adopt a flexible approach that encourages and rewards positive outcomes, avoiding prescribed solutions.
- Use robust science and best practice as the basis for quantifying and calibrating a cost effective and rigorous performance standard for defining environmental quality.
- Integrate building professionals in the development and operational processes to ensure wide understanding and accessibility.
- Adopt third party certification to ensure independence, credibility and consistency of the label.
- Adopt existing industry tools, practices and other standards wherever possible to support developments in policy and technology, build on existing skills and understanding and minimise costs.

- Align technically and operationally with relevant international standards, including the suite of standards on the 'Sustainability of Construction Works' prepared by the European Committee for Standardisation Technical Committee CEN/TC 350, as well as other international initiatives that promote harmonisation in the assessment of sustainability performance of built environment assets across their life cycle.
- Engage with a representative range of stakeholders to inform on-going development in accordance with the underlying principles and the pace of change in performance standards (accounting for policy, regulation and market capability).

The aims, objectives and principles of BREEAM are embodied within a Core Standard (Process, Science and Technical) owned and managed by BRE Global Limited. This Core Standard is applied to cover aspects of the built environment life through a suite of BREEAM Schemes. Locally developed and operated versions of the schemes are used in other countries by organisations known as National Scheme Operators (NSOs).

All NSOs are required to maintain scheme operations to internationally agreed standards and seek accreditation from a national accreditation body to demonstrate competence, impartiality and performance capability.

For a full list of BREEAM National Scheme Operators and Schemes visit [www.breeam.com](http://www.breeam.com).

## The BREEAM schemes

BRE Global Limited develops and operates a family of BREEAM schemes, each designed to assess the sustainability performance of buildings, projects or assets at various stages in the life cycle, and these include:

- BREEAM Communities: for the master-planning of a larger community of buildings
- CEEQUAL: for civil engineering, infrastructure, landscaping and public realm works
- BREEAM New Construction: for new build, domestic and non-domestic buildings
- HQM: for new build dwellings (in the United Kingdom only)
- BREEAM In-Use: for existing buildings in operation
- BREEAM Refurbishment and Fit Out: for domestic and non-domestic building fit-outs and refurbishments

## Trust in the Certification Mark

It is important that the industry trusts in the integrity and rigour of BREEAM. As a formal third-party certification scheme, robustness and fairness are key aspects that underpin the method. BREEAM provides confidence in two ways:

### 1. Creation and operation of the Certification Mark

The credibility and consistency of the BREEAM assessment and rating is a fundamental part of the scheme. As the UK's leading building science centre, BRE is owned by the BRE Trust, a registered charity that works to improve the quality and sustainability of our buildings and built environment for the wider public benefit. BRE promotes best practice and develops knowledge and understanding throughout the sector and is independent from those interest groups involved in the design and construction of new buildings.

BRE is highly respected as a world leading authority in building performance research, testing, evaluation, standard setting and certification with over 90 years of experience operating both within the UK and internationally. The science-based content and independent application in accordance

with recognised international standards<sup>1</sup> underpin both the creation and operation of BREEAM. BRE Global, the BRE's certification body and operators of BREEAM, is accredited by the United Kingdom Accreditation Service (UKAS) against these standards to ensure independence, competence and impartiality.

A key aspect of this impartiality is the open and accountable governance structure. The operation of BREEAM (as with all our assurance activities) is overseen by an independent Governing Body. The Governing Body represents a breadth of stakeholder interests to ensure, among other things, that BRE Global acts in a manner that is beyond reproach, operates our processes correctly, treats our customers fairly and is always acting for the public good.

## 2. Assurance through certification

Independence is a key feature of BREEAM as it provides confidence to the consumer. Assessors are trained and licensed by BRE to undertake the BREEAM assessment and determine a rating. To view a current list of BREEAM Assessors visit [www.greenbooklive.com](http://www.greenbooklive.com). The BREEAM Assessor will evaluate the asset using the criteria and methodologies defined in this technical manual and its supporting assessment tools.

Once an assessment is complete and has achieved a positive outcome in the BRE Global quality assurance procedure, a certificate will be issued. The certificate provides formal verification that the BREEAM Assessor has completed their assessment in accordance with the requirements of the scheme and its quality standards. This in turn providing confidence to any interested party or stakeholder in the BREEAM rating and performance of the asset.

Anyone wishing to verify a certified assessment and rating of a building against BREEAM can do so by either checking its BREEAM certificate, which will contain the scheme's certification mark (see Figure 1), or by searching the project listings on Green Book Live <http://www.greenbooklive.com/www.greenbooklive.com>.



Figure 1: BREEAM certification mark

<sup>1</sup> BS EN ISO/IEC 17065:2012 General requirements for bodies operating product certification systems for certification activities associated with the assessment of environmental performance.

## BREEAM In-Use International

BREEAM In-Use International Residential is a performance-based assessment method for the certification of existing residential assets. If you are looking to assess existing commercial assets, please refer to SD 6063 technical manual for BREEAM In-Use International: Commercial.

The primary aim of BREEAM In-Use is to mitigate the operational impacts of existing assets on the environment.

Clients can measure, evaluate and reflect the performance of their new assets against best practice in an independent, cost-effective and robust manner. The BREEAM In-Use International assessment process is broken down into two Parts:

1. **Asset Performance:** *benchmarking the performance of the asset, outlining areas of best practice, as well as potential scope for improvement.*
2. **Management Performance:** *benchmarking the building management processes used within an asset, outlining areas of best practice, as well as potential to reach optimal asset performance.*

The outcome of a BREEAM In-Use International assessment is a certified BREEAM In-Use rating for the Parts which an assessment is undertaken against. All Parts can be assessed and certified in isolation, and each will receive an independent rating, reflecting performance across the environmental categories listed in Table 2.

The process enables performance levels to be benchmarked, providing the platform for informed management decisions to be made, helping to optimise performance. Through on-going assessments, BREEAM In-Use International encourages continual improvement.

Table 2: BREEAM In-Use International environmental categories

Environmental category	Purpose
Management	Encourages sustainable management practices throughout the life cycle of the asset, ensuring that both technical and non-technical building users have appropriate guidance on how they can help maximise sustainable performance. This enables assets to put in place clear targets and provide feedback loops to ensure that processes can be optimised moving forward.
Health and Wellbeing	Encourages assets to provide healthy, safe, comfortable and accessible environments, both internally and externally, for their building users.
Energy	Encourages the reduction of energy use by recognising building with lower operational energy consumption and carbon emissions over the lifetime of the asset. It assesses the inherent energy efficiency of the building fabric, installed servicing systems and renewable energy generation capacity.
Transport	Encourages the provision of improved access to local amenities and to sustainable means of transport, i.e. public transport and other alternative transport solutions for building users. This enables solutions that support a reduction in car journeys and, therefore, congestion and CO <sub>2</sub> emissions over the life of the asset.

Environmental category	Purpose
Water	Encourages sustainable water use throughout the operation of the asset, and the associated site. This ensures the asset focuses on identifying means of reducing potable water consumption (internal and external) over the lifetime of the building and minimising losses through leakage.
Resources	Encourages the prudent and responsible use of resources including materials and waste. To reduce whole life impacts from resource use the category requires users to consider the environmental impacts of the operations for the life of an asset. The category encourages users to evaluate resource use within the context of a circular economy and waste in accordance with the waste hierarchy.
Resilience	Encourages consideration of an asset's exposure to a range of risks such as; climate-related physical risks and local watercourse pollution, excess material damage, and physical security. Then encourages the pro-active management of these risks to minimise their impact and ensure rapid recovery.
Land Use and Ecology	Encourages assets to gain an awareness of the current and potential ecological value on-site, and the potential impact the operation of the asset has on this value. This enables long-term strategies, including those for management and maintenance, to be established that will protect and enhance ecological value in the future
Pollution	Encourages the prevention and control of both airborne and waterborne pollution associated with the asset's location and use. Then encourages the asset to pro-actively minimise the risk of pollution on surrounding communities and environments, as well as managing the transition risks associated with refrigerants.

## The value of data collection

Real estate owners, occupiers, developers and funders around the world are facing ever increasing demands to address Corporate Social Responsibility. This results in a need to have clear reporting processes related to the assets they own, manage and occupy.

By gathering, analysing and sharing data trends related to the performance of these assets, BREEAM In-Use can help clients to develop a common understanding of how their assets perform, outlining the areas which present the largest opportunity for improvement.

Assessing an asset according to BREEAM In-Use means a client can:

- Set key performance indicators for energy, water, waste and greenhouse gas performance.
- Understand the performance of assets within their portfolios.
- Benchmark individual assets against other assets within owner portfolios.
- Optimise the performance of their assets through good management, maintenance and occupation policies and procedures.
- Set performance improvement targets and measure progress over time.

- Support BRE on the continuing development of BREEAM In-Use by identifying and improving best environmental performance of existing buildings.

## How to use BREEAM In-Use International

This technical document has been created to:

- Enable qualified and licensed BREEAM In-Use International Assessors to complete BREEAM In-Use International assessments and determine a rating.
- Enable BRE Global Ltd to complete quality assurance reviews of a BREEAM In-Use licenced Assessor's assessment, in accordance with the standards to which BRE Global Ltd is accredited.
- As a reference for clients who plan to assess their asset/management processes against BREEAM In-Use International.

The technical manual is split into six sections:

1. Introduction to BREEAM
2. Scope

This section describes what can be assessed under BREEAM In-Use International. The Scope section can be used by clients and BREEAM In-Use Assessors to check whether this is the correct BREEAM Scheme to use for their project.

3. Scoring and rating

This section illustrates how performance is measured and rated. It outlines the BREEAM In-Use International rating level benchmarks, the minimum standards for certain assessment issues, and the Environmental category weightings. Please note: for the purpose of formal certification, performance must be verified by a BREEAM In-Use International Assessor.

4. Evidence requirements

This section provides guidance to BREEAM In-Use International Assessors on the various types and forms of evidence required to demonstrate compliance with BREEAM In-Use International issues. It also includes a description of why BREEAM requires an auditable trail of evidence, and a table of general types of evidence that are typically required and used as a form of compliance.

5. Building details

This section includes an explanation of asset related data that must be completed prior to undertaking an assessment. The data that is filled out within this section will assist in determining scoring, such as energy benchmarking.

6. Assessment issues

Each of the two parts are made up of a series of assessment issues, which relate to each of the Environmental categories. Within each issue the levels of performance (the available credits) against which the asset will be assessed are outlined. By using the appropriate evidence, a corresponding number of available BREEAM In-Use International credits can be awarded.

Each Environmental category begins with a category **Summary** and **Context** statement. **Aim** and **Value** statements are then given for each BREEAM In-Use International assessment issue.

Each BREEAM In-Use issue is then structured as follows:

- a) **Issue information:** contains the assessment issue reference, title, number of credits available and whether the issue forms part of the BREEAM minimum standards.
- b) **Aim:** outlines the objective of the issue and the impact it measures or mitigates.

- c) **Value:** outlines the key value of the issue and summarises beneficial outcomes resulting from compliance with the issue criteria.
- d) **Question:** contains the question that is asked to assess the BREEAM In-Use assessment issue. This includes a table of all possible answer options including the respective number of credits rewarded for each one.
- e) **Assessment criteria:** outlines the requirements that must be met in order for certain answer options to be selected.
- f) **Specific notes:** asset type specific guidance will be given where necessary.
- g) **Methodology:** includes a description of any methodology used to determine the number of credits achieved for a given level of performance. It includes, for example, calculation procedures or guidance on how to relate non-BREEAM schemes, standards or qualifications referenced to the assessment criteria.
- h) **Evidence:** describes the types of project information that must be provided to the licensed BREEAM Assessor to enable verification of performance against the assessment criteria and justification of credits awarded. The BREEAM evidential requirements section provides further guidance on evidential requirements.
- i) **Definitions:** includes any definition of terms used in the assessment issue.
- j) **Checklists and tables:** contains any checklists and useful tables.
- k) **Additional information:** contains any further information relevant to the application of the assessment criteria, or sources of additional information that may be of use in addressing the issue.

Please Note: Compliance Notes, which provide information on how to determine compliance for specific BREEAM Issues related to this version, are now all published on the BREEAM Knowledge Base at [kb.breeam.com](http://kb.breeam.com). Each compliance note in the BREEAM Knowledge Base has a title and unique reference number, which can be quoted in BREEAM In-Use international Assessor verification comments.

## Scope

BREEAM In-Use International Residential can be used to assess the sustainability performance of existing residential assets. Residential institutions such as residential care home, hotels, hostels and student accommodation are considered to be non-domestic assets and should be assessed under SD 6063 BREEAM In-Use International Commercial manual.

The construction of new buildings, new infrastructure or communities' projects, and existing building refurbishment and fit-outs cannot be assessed under the BREEAM In-Use scheme. Projects requiring these assessment types should be assessed under the relevant BREEAM schemes.

BREEAM In-Use International has been developed for use in all countries where there is no locally adapted version. Please note: where a country has a locally adapted version of BREEAM In-Use International that is appropriate to the asset type being assessed, this must be used in preference to BREEAM In-Use International. Please refer to [www.breeam.com](http://www.breeam.com) for further details on countries with local adapted version of BREEAM.

## Eligibility criteria

For all asset types that can be assessed using BREEAM In-Use International, the eligibility criteria listed below must also be met:

- 1) The asset must be a complete and finished structure.
- 2) Assets are required to be stabilized and have maintained a minimum level of occupancy.
  - a) Stabilized assets are those are either at least 5 years old **OR** have achieved an 92% occupancy rate  
AND
  - b) The asset must have an average occupancy of at least 80% for one year prior to the start assessment. This threshold must be met for the year in which consumption data is supplied  
AND
  - c) The asset must be intended to be a Primary Residence of Occupants.
- 3) An assessment does not have to include the whole building; it could include just part of a building or a single floor. In such cases, the scope of the BREEAM In-Use International assessment must include all relevant amenity and service areas. Buildings that are a mix of Residential and Commercial are required to complete separate assessments using the appropriate standard for these space types.
- 4) Assessments can range in size between a single home or a large block of apartments.
  - a) Each assessment may include a maximum of 500 homes or apartments.
  - b) Apartment buildings must also contain the common areas within the building
  - c) Apartments can choose either a single certificate for the assessment, or a certificate for each apartment within the assessment
  - d) Each home will receive a separate certificate
  - e) Projects with more than 500 units should contact BRE, but are typically better assessed as a number of smaller assessments
- 5) Assessments cannot normally include more than one apartment building. The only exception is where several buildings meet the following criteria:

- a) All buildings must be located on the same site. The boundary of the site must be drawn where responsibility of management or ownership of the site changes.
  - b) All buildings must have similar performance and be of similar design and age.
  - c) Building management and maintenance policies, procedures and approach must be the same across all the buildings that make up the asset to ensure consistent implementation.
  - d) Evidence must be collated from each building that is included in the assessment and where performance against the BREEAM requirements varies, the final score will be determined by the apartment with the lowest level of performance.
- 6) The asset must comply with all relevant environmental and health and safety legislation in its location

## Asset types that can be assessed

The asset types that can be assessed under the BREEAM In-Use International Residential are outlined in Table 3.

Table 3: Asset types that can be assessed under BREEAM In-Use International Residential

Asset type	Asset sub-type
Apartment buildings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mid and High rise apartment blocks</li> <li>• Low rise or Garden style apartment blocks</li> </ul>
Individual homes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Detached or Semi-detached homes</li> <li>• Terraced homes or Townhouses</li> </ul>

## Scoring and rating of BREEAM In-Use International assessed assets

There are a number of elements that determine the overall performance of a BREEAM In-Use assessment. They are:

1. The BREEAM In-Use International rating level benchmarks
2. The BREEAM In-Use International minimum standards
3. The environmental category weightings
4. The BREEAM In-Use International assessment issues and credits

The next sections summarise how these elements combine to produce a BREEAM In-Use rating for a new building and are followed by a description of the process of determining a rating.

### BREEAM In-Use International rating benchmarks

The BREEAM rating benchmarks for projects assessed using BREEAM In-Use International are outlined in Table 4.

Table 4: BREEAM In-Use International rating benchmarks

BREEAM In-Use International Rating	% score	Star rating
OUTSTANDING	≥85	★★★★★
EXCELLENT	≥70 to <85	★★★★★
VERY GOOD	≥55 to <70	★★★★
GOOD	≥40 to <55	★★★
PASS	≥25 to <40	★★
ACCEPTABLE	≥10 to <25	★
UNCLASSIFIED	<10	-

BREEAM In-Use rating benchmarks enable a client and all other stakeholders to compare the performance of assets.

An unclassified BREEAM In-Use rating represents performance that is non-compliant with BREEAM In-Use, in terms of failing to meet either the BREEAM In-Use minimum standards of performance for key environmental issues or the overall threshold score required to achieve certification.

### Environmental category weightings

Category weightings are fundamental to any building sustainability assessment method and provide a means of defining and ranking the relative importance and impact of sustainability issues. BREEAM uses an explicit category weighting system to determine the overall BREEAM score. The process for defining the BREEAM category weightings is set out in the BREEAM Briefing Paper ‘New Methodology for Generating BREEAM Category Weightings’ available on the BREEAM website. The methodology has been applied in stakeholder consultation activities to generate consensus-based weightings for all categories across the BREEAM family of schemes, including BREEAM In-Use. The outputs from this

exercise have been reviewed by BRE Global for the purposes of application in the BREEAM In-Use International Scheme.

The weightings for each of the nine environmental categories included in the BREEAM In-Use International Scheme are outlined in Table 5.

Table 5: BREEAM In-Use International Residential environmental category weightings

Environmental category	Weighting	
	1: Asset Performance	2: Management Performance
Management	0%	10%
Health and Wellbeing	17%	16.5%
Energy	28.5%	29.5%
Transport	7%	0%
Water	9%	8.5%
Resources	10.5%	12%
Resilience	14.5%	11%
Land Use and Ecology	4.5%	8.5%
Pollution	9%	4%
<b>Total</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>100%</b>
Exemplary (additional)	8%	9%

## Minimum standards

To ensure that performance against fundamental environmental issues is not over-looked in pursuit of a particular rating, BREEAM sets minimum standards of performance in key areas e.g. energy, water etc. The majority of BREEAM credits can, however, be traded, so non-compliance in one area can be offset through compliance in another to achieve the target BREEAM rating.

To achieve a particular BREEAM rating, the minimum overall percentage score must be achieved as well as the minimum standards detailed in Table 6 and Table 7.

Table 6: Minimum BREEAM standards by rating level: Asset Performance

	Minimum standards by BREEAM In-Use rating: Asset Performance					
BREEAM issue	Acceptable	Pass	Good	Very Good	Excellent	Outstanding
Wat 01 – Water monitoring	None	Answer option C, D or E				
Rsc 02 – Reuse and recycling facilities	None					Answer options C or G
Rsl 01 – Flood risk assessment	None			Answer options C, D, F or G		

Table 7: Minimum BREEAM standards by rating level: Management Performance

	Minimum standards by BREEAM In-Use rating: Management Performance									
BREEAM issue	Acceptable	Pass	Good	Very Good	Excellent	Outstanding				
Man 02 – Management engagement and feedback	None	Answer option F or G								
Man 04 – Environmental policies and procedures	None	Answer option B								
Rsc 05 – Sustainable procurement	Answer option C									
Rsl 09 – Fire risk management	Answer option C and G or Answer option D									

## BREEAM assessment issues and credits

BREEAM In-Use International is made up of two different Parts, each of which can be assessed independently. Each Part consists of individual assessment issues across the various BREEAM environmental categories. Each assessment issue addresses a specific building related environmental impact or issue and is assigned a number of credits.

BREEAM credits are awarded where an asset meets the best practice performance levels defined for an assessment issue, i.e. the impact has been mitigated. For example, in the case of the health and wellbeing category, a specific building occupant-related issue has been addressed, e.g. thermal comfort.

The number of credits available for an individual assessment issue will vary and generally reflect the importance of mitigating the impact of the assessment issue. In most cases, where there are multiple credits available, the number awarded is based on a sliding scale or benchmark, where progressively higher standards of building performance are rewarded with a higher number of credits.

In addition to the category score, overall score and BREEAM rating, verified performance against individual assessment issues also provides users with a credible set of key building performance indicators for a range of building impacts. It is therefore possible to use the method to define performance levels in support of specific organisational policy objectives for individual environmental issues as well as using BREEAM to define overall targets. However, be aware that cost implications can occur if targets are set using individual issues and credit levels.

### Credits for exemplary-level performance

BREEAM seeks to support higher levels of performance within the built environment. One way it does this is through the availability of additional credits to recognise sustainability-related benefits or performance levels not currently recognised by standard BREEAM assessment issues and criteria. This rewards developments that go beyond established best practice in a particular aspect of sustainability.

Awarding credits for exemplary level of performance enables clients to boost their building's BREEAM performance. BREEAM In-Use currently awards exemplary-level credits, where assets meet exemplary performance criteria defined within an existing BREEAM issue, i.e. going beyond the standard BREEAM assessment criteria.

Each exemplary-level credit achieved adds 1% to an asset's overall score. The maximum number of 'exemplary-level credits' that can be awarded for any one asset is 10 per Part; therefore, the maximum additional score available is 10%.

Exemplary-level credits can be awarded regardless of the asset's final BREEAM rating, i.e. they can be awarded at any BREEAM rating level, and no assessment can exceed 100% for the overall score.

Table 8: Exemplary level credits

Part	Issue	Answer Option	Credits
Asset Performance	Hea 12 – Inclusive design	Option F	1
Asset Performance	Ene 10 – Demand side management	N/A	4
Asset Performance	Rsc 02 – Reuse and recycling facilities	Option L	1
Asset Performance	Rsl 01 – Flood risk assessment	Option H	1

Asset Performance	Lue 02 – Ecological features of planted area	Option E	1
Management Performance	Man 04 - Environmental policies and procedures	Option E	1
Management Performance	Ene 24 – Reduction of carbon emissions	N/A	3
Management Performance	Rsc 05 – Sustainable procurement	Option H	1
Management Performance	Rsl 06 - Emergency plans and climate-related physical risks	Option D	1
		Option H	1
Management Performance	Rsl 10 - Security risk assessment	Option D	1
Management Performance	Pol 06 - Reduction of nighttime light pollution	Option E	1

## Calculating an asset's BREEAM rating

A BREEAM In-Use Assessor must determine the BREEAM In-Use International rating using the relevant reporting tool/software and in compliance with the requirements as set out in this technical manual. The process of determining a BREEAM In-Use International rating for Asset Performance and Management Performance is outlined below. As mentioned previously, an independent score is provided for each Part assessed.

1. For each of BREEAM's environmental categories the number of credits awarded is determined by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor according to the number of credits available when the criteria of each assessment issue have been met.
2. The percentage of available credits achieved is calculated for each category.
3. The percentage of available credits achieved in each category is then multiplied by the corresponding weighting for each category to give the overall environmental category score.
4. The category scores are added together to give the overall BREEAM In-Use International score for the Part being assessed.
5. The overall score is compared with the BREEAM rating benchmark levels and, provided all minimum standards have been met, the relevant BREEAM rating is achieved.
6. An additional 1% can be added to the final BREEAM In-Use International score for each exemplary-level credit achieved with the total BREEAM In-Use International score capped at 100%. The maximum number of 'exemplary-level credits' that can be awarded for any one asset is 10 per Part; therefore, the maximum additional score available is 10%.

Table 9: Calculating an asset's BREEAM Rating for Part 1: Asset performance

Environmental Category	Credits Achieved	Credits Available	% of Credits Achieved	Category Weighting	Category Score (%)
Management	-	-	-	-	-
Health and Wellbeing	24	35	68.57	0.170	11.66
Energy	59	64	92.19	0.285	26.27
Transport	16	23	69.57	0.070	4.87
Water	21	29	72.41	0.090	6.52
Resources	15	17	88.24	0.105	9.26
Resilience	13	18	72.22	0.145	10.47
Land Use and Ecology	5	6	88.33	0.045	3.75
Pollution	15	16	93.75	0.09	8.44
Exemplary	4	8	50.00	0.08	4.00
<b>Final BREEAM score</b>	85.2%				
<b>BREEAM rating</b>	OUTSTANDING				

## BREEAM evidential requirements

BREEAM is a third-party certification scheme operated in accordance with international standards to ensure it is applied in a consistent, impartial and robust manner. The BREEAM In-Use International Assessor's assessment report and the BRE Global Quality Assurance and certification process are core elements of BREEAM, and they are designed to ensure that clients can have confidence in the BREEAM In-Use International rating determined by the Assessor.

To maintain consistency and confidence certification requires that, all assessment decisions be based on verified and credible information that can be traced, i.e. decisions are evidence based. This is not only important for compliance with the international standards to which BRE Global is accredited as a certification body, but also manages risk to clients and BREEAM In-Use International Assessors in the event that a certification outcome is challenged.

### The BREEAM In-Use International Assessor role

The role of the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor is to gather information in a competent and impartial manner and use it to assess performance against the BREEAM scheme. To award a BREEAM credit, the Assessor must be satisfied that the evidence gathered demonstrates unambiguous compliance with all relevant criteria defined in the BREEAM scheme. All evidence must be referenced appropriately by the Assessor in their assessment submissions and made available to BRE Global Ltd for quality assurance checks.

Within each BREEAM issue, the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor must determine the level of performance within the relevant spaces. Where a consistent level of performance is not provided across the entire asset for a particular issue, the final score for that issue is determined by the space with the lowest level of performance. This applies to all BREEAM In-Use International issues for all assessments, unless stated within the respective issue. Where an asset is made from a variety of asset types, the Assessor must provide evidence that demonstrates the level of performance from each asset type for each issue. For example, where there is retail and office space within a single assessment, the sample of evidence must include documentation for each type. This should be supported by a verification statement from the Assessor outlining what has been witnessed and verified during the site visit, clarifying the situation to BRE Global quality assurance.

Clear, ordered and well referenced evidence for each BREEAM issue and criterion facilitates efficient quality assurance and a certification decision. The submission of Assessor Verification Comments and the collection and referencing of evidence can all be undertaken within the BREEAM In-Use International Online Platform.

The evidence file name should include the BREEAM In-Use International Issue reference number as well as the name of the document/file (e.g. Rsc01\_Condition survey) to ensure ease of reference in the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor's comments and for Quality Assurance.

If large, multipage documents are used as evidence, the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor should highlight the page or section of the document that demonstrates compliance and reference this specifically in their Assessor verification comments. If photos are used as evidence, these must clearly show how compliance with a criterion is sought and, where needed, be annotated. Photos must also be date stamped to confirm when they were taken.

The BREEAM In-Use International Assessor determines the BREEAM rating and their submission of assessor verification comments via the BREEAM In-Use International Online Platform. This formal record of an Assessor's audit against the criteria defined in the technical manual for a BREEAM scheme. The BREEAM certificate issued by BRE Global provides assurance that the service provided by the Assessor, i.e. the assessment and determination of the BREEAM rating has been conducted in accordance with the requirements of the scheme.

## Evidence types

Evidence does not necessarily need to be prepared specifically for the purpose of the BREEAM assessment. In many instances, the Assessor should source readily available and prepared information to demonstrate compliance. For this reason, BREEAM aims to avoid being prescriptive on the type of evidence required, although some issues do require specific documents.

The BREEAM In-Use International Assessor will find that many assessment issues require more than one piece or type of information to demonstrate compliance with one criterion. Alternatively, one piece of information may be sufficient to demonstrate compliance with multiple criteria.

To help the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor understand how the different types of documentation they collate can be used as evidence, evidence types are grouped broadly into three categories:

- 1) **General evidence** includes a broad list of defined information commonly produced for an asset. One or more pieces of this type of information can be used to demonstrate compliance for one or more of the assessment issues and criteria, as deemed appropriate by the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor.

General BREEAM evidence types are listed in Table 11 and not specifically in the Evidence section within each BREEAM issue. Not all general evidence types will be appropriate for all assessment issues and it is the responsibility of the BREEAM In-Use Assessor to ensure that the evidence provided specifically demonstrates compliance and is fully referenced in the assessment submission.

- 2) **Specific evidence** is particular information that must be provided to verify compliance with the relevant criteria for the BREEAM credit sought. In all cases this is the only type of evidence acceptable to BRE Global Ltd for that particular issue or criterion. If the specific evidence is not provided and referenced appropriately in the assessment submission, the Quality Assurance audit will identify it as a non-conformity and a certification decision will be delayed until such time as the non-conformity is addressed.

When required, specific evidence is defined and listed in the Evidence section of the assessment issue. Specific evidence required to demonstrate compliance with particular criteria is listed but this evidence alone may not be sufficient to demonstrate full compliance. Additional general evidence types may also be required. Not all BREEAM In-Use issues have specific evidence requirements.

- 3) **Other types of evidence** provided by a client not listed in Table 11 or the 'Evidence' section for each issue, can still be used. To avoid non-conformities and delays in certification, other types of evidence must be credible, robust and traceable to the same assurance level as, or better than, specified or general evidence types defined in the technical manual. If in doubt, BRE should be contacted prior to awarding credits and referencing such evidence in the submission for QA and certification decision.

For some assessment issues, the BREEAM In-Use Assessor will require a mix of general and specific evidence types.

## Evidence principles

BREEAM Assessors and the BRE Global Ltd Quality Assurance work to the following evidence principles.

Where specific evidence is defined and listed in the 'Evidence' section within each assessment issue, this must be sourced and verified by the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor.

Where no specific evidence is listed, this means there are potentially a number of different types of 'general' asset information, as outlined in Table 11 that the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor can source and use to demonstrate compliance.

To determine whether general evidence types are appropriate for an assessment issue, the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor must consider the BREEAM evidence principles outlined in Table 10. Where the 'general evidence types' meet the principles outlined in Table 10 and the guidance provided in the 'robustness of evidence' section, where appropriate, such evidence is admissible for the assessment and the BRE Global Quality Assurance audit.

These principles are not listed in a hierarchical order and are all equally important when considering which evidence type to assess, reference and submit.

Table 10: BREEAM evidence principles

Principle	Objective	A question to ask to check
<b>1 – Evidence for all criteria and all credits sought</b>		
Evidence demonstrates that ALL relevant criteria and sub-criteria are achieved for each credit sought and where relevant, is provided to support definitions etc.	Completeness	Are all criteria and sub-criteria covered? Have all relevant and definitions been addressed?
<b>2 – Unambiguous assessment</b>		
The assessment demonstrates unambiguous compliance and the evidence supports this assessment.  Evidence (and supporting notes) clearly demonstrate to a third-party reviewer that the criteria have been met.	Independent review compatibility	Would a third party (e.g. BRE Global Ltd) come to the same assessment decision based on the evidence submitted?
<b>3 - Robust</b>		
Always ensure the evidence type is robust.  Evidence selected contains all the relevant basic information along with robust constituent parts that are needed.  (see Robustness of evidence section for further details on both of the above)	Proof that evidence is robust and from a reliable source	Using a BREEAM In-Use International Assessor's judgement, is the evidence robust enough to demonstrate compliance with this criterion? Does the evidence contain all the relevant basic information? Does it provide a fully auditable trail of compliance?
<b>4 – Use existing evidence</b>		
Use existing asset information to demonstrate compliance. In most cases evidence should not need to be 'created' for BREEAM compliance purposes.	Minimises evidence and reduces time and cost of compliance.	Does an existing type of asset information robustly demonstrate compliance for the credits sought?

## Robustness of evidence

Robust evidence provides confirmation that the assessment has been carried out correctly and the asset complies with the criteria for the BREEAM credits sought. The Assessor should consider the following when gathering project information and evaluating whether the evidence provided is as 'robust' as possible:

- Is there more than one piece of evidence that could be used to demonstrate compliance?
- Is the chosen evidence robust and appropriate to demonstrate that a particular criterion has been achieved?

Any evidence submitted for a BREEAM assessment must be robust in terms of its source and its traceability. The minimum information the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor must expect to see when certain types of evidence are submitted is listed below:

- **Communication records:** Any communication records used as evidence must provide clear confirmation of the asset name, author's identity and role, the date and the identity of the recipients.
- **Formal letters of correspondence:** Letters should be on company or organisation headed note-paper with a signature (electronic signatures are acceptable). Ideally letters should be a secured document.
- **Drawings/site plans/maps/installation diagrams:** All of these should include the building or site name, title of drawing, date, revision number and a scale.
- **Specification/building manual:** A specification or building manual clearly relates to the asset under assessment, and it has a date and revision number. Where sections of a specification or building manual are provided, the Assessor should reference the extract and as a minimum submit the front and contents page of the document detailing the project name, revision number and date. Specifications must always refer to operational conditions.
- **Photographic evidence:** This should be dated and have a title/description to clearly link it to the asset and issue concerned.

For other types of evidence not listed, the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor should use this minimum information list as a guide to suitable evidence. As a minimum the evidence used to assess compliance must contain key information such as the author, date, revision numbers etc.

Table 11: Evidence types

Ref	Document or evidence type	Description and notes
E1	Billing data	Evidence in the form of billing that supports the requirements outlined in the criteria. Billing data must be from the organisation providing the billed services to the asset.
E2	Building (Energy) Management Systems(B(E)MS)/Metering data	Evidence on consumption of metered utilities, such as gas, electricity and water. This data can either be from individual sub-meters or collected through B(E)MS that is installed in the asset.
E3	Building information model (BIM)	The BIM (or BIM files) used for the project containing relevant information/evidence of compliance.

Ref	Document or evidence type	Description and notes
E4	BRE Global correspondence reference number	For example, the reference number for a BRE Global response to a BREEAM In-Use International Assessor's technical query.
E5	BREEAM In-Use Assessor's site inspection report	A formal report based on the BREEAM In-Use Assessor's own survey of the site or building to confirm compliance with BREEAM criteria. A BREEAM In-Use International Assessor's Site Visit Report (SVR) can serve as a form of evidence of compliance in its own right, and should include photographs taken by the BREEAM In-Use International Assessor as part of the survey.
E6	Certificates of compliance (third party)	Examples include ISO 14001, BES 6001, FSC (Forest Stewardship Council), EPC (Environmental Profile Certificate), EPD (Environmental Product Declaration) etc.
E7	Communication records	Formal communication records between or from relevant project stakeholders or other third parties confirming an appointment, action or outcome. This may be in the form of a letter, meeting minutes, email correspondence, publication or another form of media (see also additional guidance on following pages).
E8	Computer aided modelling results and outputs	Examples include thermal modelling, flooding, life cycle assessment/ modelling, life cycle costing, ventilation modelling etc.
E9	Contractual information	Documents/contracts outlining how certain maintenance/monitoring/testing or other service is carried out by a (third) party.
E10	Other third-party information	For example, maps, public transport timetables, product data or details, manufacturers' literature, government or local standards or codes, product labelling.
E11	Photographic evidence	Digital images that support or confirm that building services/elements or other relevant infrastructure or product is in place/installed at the asset.
E12	Professional services contract	An agreement to provide professional or consulting services such as: maintenance, testing, or legal or technical advice.
E13	Risk assessment	The risk assessment considers the various design risks and other risks on a project and how each risk will be managed and the party responsible for managing each risk.
E14	Professional specialist reports	Professional reports resulting from specialist surveys/studies/test results including (but not limited to):

Ref	Document or evidence type	Description and notes
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Environmental Management Systems/Plans</li> <li>• Flood risk assessment</li> <li>• Acoustics</li> <li>• Indoor air quality</li> <li>• Transportation analysis</li> <li>• Commissioning and maintenance reports and strategies</li> <li>• Landscape and habitat management plan</li> <li>• Legionella management plan, etc.</li> </ul>
E15	Schedule of services	<p>A list of specific services and tasks to be undertaken by a party involved in the project which is incorporated into their professional services contract.</p>
E16	Staff interviews	<p>Interviews with staff members that support that specified (management) practices/reviews are being carried out in the asset. Staff interviews are an important part of the verification that formal processes/procedures/documents are made available to staff/building users.</p>

## Building details

### Asset

The following details should be entered when an asset is created.

**Note:** Fields marked \* are mandatory.

#### Basic asset details

Field name	Description
<b>Asset Manager*</b>	Select the Asset Manager.  <b>Note:</b> This is a user type in the BREEAM In-Use online platform. Clients can create users and designate them as an Asset Manager to give them read/ write access to the assessment.
<b>Name of Asset*</b>	Enter the name of the asset.  <b>Note:</b> The name of the asset entered here will appear above the asset's address on any certificates produced for this asset. The certificate shows a maximum of 28 characters.
<b>Asset Description</b>	Enter a short description of the asset.  <b>Note:</b> Asset Description cannot be more than 500 characters.
<b>Year Built*</b>	Select the period in which the asset was constructed.
<b>Year Built specific</b>	Enter the year of construction was completed (if known).
<b>Most recent major refurbishment</b>	Select the year of the most recent major refurbishment.

#### Full asset address

Field name	Description
<b>Address Line1*</b>	First line of address for the asset (if the asset only comprises part of a building, additional details relating to the entire building should also be entered).
<b>Address Line2</b>	Second line of address for the asset.  <b>Note:</b> Address line 1 and Address line 2 will be combined as a single line on the certificate and a maximum of 28 characters will be shown.
<b>Address Line3</b>	Third line of address for the asset.
<b>Address Line4</b>	Fourth line of address for the asset.  <b>Note:</b> Address line 3 and Address line 4 will be combined as a single line on the certificate and a maximum of 28 characters will be shown.

<b>Town/City*</b>	Address Town or City.
<b>Country*</b>	Select country.
<b>County/Region*</b>	Select county or region.
<b>Postcode/ZIP code*</b>	Address Postcode or Zip code.

## Basic building details

Basic building details should be completed when a measurement is created. There are three sections: Ownership/Occupancy Details, Asset Dimensions, and Asset Type.

**Note:** Fields marked \* are mandatory.

### Ownership/Occupancy Details

#### Asset Ownership/Occupier

Asset Ownership/Occupier contains questions about the asset owner and its occupier(s). Filling out this data will assist in determining who carries the responsibility for carrying out or implementing the requirements as outlined in the criteria.

Field name	Description
<b>Name of the organisation or person that owns the asset</b>	Enter the name of the person or organisation that owns the asset.
<b>Name of the organisation that manages the tenancy of the asset</b>	Enter the name of the organisation that manages the tenancy of the asset.
<b>Name of the organisation leading the BREEAM In-Use International assessment</b>	Enter the name of the organisation leading the BREEAM In-Use International assessment.

#### Occupancy

Occupancy contains questions about the number of occupants and units.

Field name	Description
<b>Number of occupants</b>	Enter the number of residents within the building
<b>Occupancy rate</b>	Percentage of units that are occupied (averaged over 12 months)
<b>Number of units</b>	Enter the number of individual home units within the assessed area

### Asset dimensions

Field name	Description
Whole building Gross Internal floor Area (m <sup>2</sup> )*	Enter the Gross Internal floor Area (GIA) in m <sup>2</sup> for the whole building, including assessed and non-assessed space.

The following questions relating to the floor area of the asset only refer to the area of the asset that will be assessed. Please refer to Eligibility criteria for further details.

Field name	Description
Gross Internal Area (m <sup>2</sup> )*	Enter the Gross Internal Area (GIA) in m <sup>2</sup> of the assessed space.
Measurement standard*	Select/enter the measurement standard used to determine GIA (if known).  Examples can include, but are not limited to: Code of Measuring Practice (RICS) International Property Measurement Standards (IPMSC) A Unified Approach to Measuring Office Space (BOMA and IFMA) Other (please state) Unknown measurement standard used.

Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>)\* – Enter the Gross Internal Area (GIA) in m<sup>2</sup>.

Generally, the Gross Internal Area is the area of an asset measured to the internal face of the perimeter walls at each floor level.

The GIA is required by the Operational Energy Calculator to ensure that the performance of assets can be compared robustly against each other. We are aware that this can be a significant challenge for assets where this data is not available. An alternative approach is needed which provides flexibility for users, whilst retaining consistency to facilitate robust comparisons. Therefore, BREEAM In-Use Residential allows users to either measure or estimate the GIA. However, to reflect the uncertainty associated with estimates the number of credits awarded are reduced. This reduction is proportional to the estimated areas compared to the known Lettable Area.

The BREEAM In-Use International Assessor (herein referred to as the Assessor) **must** ensure that all consumption data that is filled out in the BREEAM In-Use online platform relates to the area entered as the GIA.

Field name	Description
<b>Non-Lettable Area (m<sup>2</sup>)</b>	Enter the Non-Lettable Area (NLA) in m <sup>2</sup>

Non-Lettable Areas or common areas are understood to be floor space area within a building from which no income can be derived. Examples include common use areas, lift lobbies, stairwells, plant and technical rooms, management offices or rooms, non-exclusive public spaces and thoroughfares.

Within BREEAM In-Use International, it has been agreed that parking areas, whether enclosed, multi-storey or surface facilities, will be **excluded** from Non-Lettable Areas.

Field name	Description
<b>Gross Lettable Area (m<sup>2</sup>)</b>	Enter the Gross Lettable Area (GLA) in m <sup>2</sup>

Gross Lettable Area of an asset is the floor space contained within a tenancy at each floor level measured from the inside of main faces of external walls and, where applicable, the inside faces of internal inter-tenancy, partition and common area walls.

Within BREEAM In-Use International, it has been agreed that parking areas, whether enclosed, multi-storey or surface facilities, will be **excluded** from Gross Lettable Areas.

#### Wider site information

Field name	Description
<b>Planning restrictions</b>	Select any planning restrictions that might be in place.
<b>Width (external) (m)</b>	Enter the building width in m. This is only the width of external façade.
<b>Length (external) (m)</b>	Enter the building length in m. This is only the length of external façade.
<b>Height (floor-to-floor height) (m)</b>	Enter the floor to floor height in m.
<b>Number of floors above ground</b>	Enter the number of floors above ground in your building.
<b>Number of floors below ground</b>	Enter the number of floors below ground in your building.
<b>Area covered by hard landscaping (m<sup>2</sup>)</b>	Enter the area covered by hard landscaping in m <sup>2</sup>
<b>Area covered by soft landscaping (m<sup>2</sup>)</b>	Enter the area covered by soft landscaping in m <sup>2</sup>

<b>Enclosed parking area (in area or spaces)</b>	Enter the area of enclosed parking areas or enter the number of enclosed parking spaces.
--	--

### Asset type

Asset type contains questions relating to the space type(s) within the asset.

**Note:** Questions marked \* are mandatory, as the inputs are used to generate the energy scores. If the asset comprises multiple types, the Gross Internal floor Area filled in under Asset dimensions must be equal to the sum of all asset types.

Field name	Description
<b>Asset type*</b>	Select the main asset type.
<b>Asset sub-type*</b>	Select the main asset sub-type.
<b>Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>)*</b>	Enter the main asset type Gross Internal Area.

The main asset type is the space type within the assessed area that accounts for the largest percentage of the total assessed area.

For each additional space type, select the Asset Type and Asset Subtype and enter the Gross Internal Area in m<sup>2</sup>.

- Asset Type 2 – Select the second asset type.
- Asset Subtype 2 – Select the second asset subtype.
- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the second asset type Gross Internal Area.
- Asset Type 3 – Select the third asset type.
- Asset Subtype 3 – Select the third asset subtype.
- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the third asset type Gross Internal Area.
- Asset Type 4 – Select the fourth asset type.
- Asset Subtype 4 – Select the fourth asset subtype.
- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the fourth asset type Gross Internal Area.
- Asset Type 5 – Select the fifth asset type.
- Asset Subtype 5 – Select the fifth asset subtype.
- Gross Internal Area (m<sup>2</sup>) – Enter the fifth asset type Gross Internal Area.

## Part 1 Asset Performance

Table 12: Asset Performance categories, credits available and environmental weightings

Environmental category	Credits available	Category weighting
Management	0	0%
Health and Well-being	35	17%
Energy	64	28.5%
Transport	23	7%
Water	29	9%
Resources	17	10.5%
Resilience	18	14.5%
Land Use and Ecology	6	4.5%
Pollution	16	9%
<b>Total</b>	<b>208</b>	<b>100%</b>
Exemplary (additional)	8	8%



## Asset Performance: Health and Wellbeing



### Summary

This category encourages provision of healthy, safe, comfortable and accessible environments, both internally and externally, for all users.

### Context

The World Health Organisation (WHO) defines health as “a state of complete physical, mental and social wellbeing and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity” and that “the enjoyment of the highest attainable standard of health is one of the fundamental rights of every human being without distinction of race, religion, political belief, economic or social condition”. The United Nations has made “Good Health and Wellbeing” one of its 17 Sustainable Development Goals (Goal 3) with the aim to “ensure healthy lives and promote wellbeing for all at all ages”. On average, people spend over 90% of their lives in and around buildings and much of the rest travelling between them. Consequently, the built environment is critical to our health and wellbeing as a result of the conditions and facilities that it provides and the behaviours that it encourages.

There is well established evidence that shows that the internal environmental conditions in buildings, including visual comfort, indoor air quality, thermal comfort and acoustic comfort, can have a significant impact on our physical and mental health. Health impacts associated with buildings include eyestrain, cardiovascular and coronary problems, bronchial complaints including asthma and allergies, dermatological complaints, musculoskeletal problems and a range of psychological impacts such as fatigue, stress, anxiety and depression. Higher risk individuals including the young, elderly, disabled and sick, can experience a range of other health impacts arising from their environment many of which can have major and sometimes life-threatening effects.

## Issues

### Hea 01 Daylighting

**2 credits**

**Aim:**

To ensure residents have access to good levels of daylight, via windows and/or skylights.

**Value:**

Provides a connection to nature to enhance mood and helps to regulate circadian rhythms.

Helps to reduce energy costs and environmental impact by reducing the need for electric lighting.

### Hea 02 Avoiding overheating from solar gain

**2 credits**

**Aim:**

To recognise and encourage external shading features that minimise overheating from solar gain.

**Value:**

Reduces overheating and increases residents' comfort.

Reduces reliance on air conditioning, thereby reducing energy bills.

### Hea 03 Internal and external lighting levels

**4 credits**

**Aim:**

To ensure appropriate lighting is provided to enable residents to perform visual tasks efficiently and accurately.

**Value:**

Allows asset users to perform relevant tasks safely, efficiently and comfortably.

Improves asset users' perception of a space and ability to accurately perceive the surroundings and to differentiate between objects.

### Hea 04 Lighting control

-

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.

### Hea 05 Minimising flicker from lighting systems

**2 credits**

**Aim:**

To encourage the installation of high frequency control gear in order to minimise the impact of flicker on occupants.

**Value:**

Prevents visual distraction, fatigue and decreased visual performance.

Reduces physiological effects such as headaches, eyestrain and the risk of epileptic seizures.

**Hea 06 View out****4 credits****Aim:**

To allow residents asset users the opportunity for the refreshment and relaxation afforded by a view out preferably of a natural outdoor environment.

**Value:**

Provides a connection to outdoor space and nature to enhance mood.

**Hea 07 User comfort control and maintenance****3 credits****Aim:**

To recognise the provision of ventilation systems that are easy to control and maintain by residents, so improving effectiveness, usability, and avoiding problems with humidity.

To recognise the provision of temperature controls for residents, improving comfort and efficiency.

**Value:**

Ensures occupants can maintain comfort levels if internal temperatures or indoor air quality levels become uncomfortable.

Reduces the impact on the environment and operating costs through unnecessary heating or cooling.

**Hea 08 Ventilation system air intakes and exhausts****2 credits****Aim:**

To ensure that the asset's ventilation system minimises the entry of external sources of air pollution.

**Value:**

Reduces the potential for indoor air pollution from a variety of pollution sources.

Supports the physical health of building occupants by reducing the risk of health concerns associated with indoor air pollution from external sources.

**Hea 09 Carbon dioxide sensors****2 credits****Aim:**

To encourage the monitoring of internal conditions to ensure a healthy indoor environment is provided.

**Value:**

Ensures good levels of indoor air quality are maintained.

Alerts asset users to changes in indoor air quality.

**Hea 10 Carbon monoxide detection****2 credits****Aim:**

To protect asset users from harmful levels of carbon monoxide associated with the asset's combustion appliances and enclosed parking areas.

**Value:**

Ensures asset users are protected from the harmful effects of carbon monoxide.

Assists in the identification of problems with combustion appliances or ventilation systems.

**Hea 11 Indoor and/or outdoor space****6 credits****Aim:**

To recognise the provision of outdoor recreational space, promoting community spirit, activity and wellbeing.

**Value:**

Encourages physical activity and a sense of community by providing outdoor recreational and community space for residents.

Encourages activities that have physical, mental and social benefits for residents.

**Hea 12 Inclusive design****4 credits****+1 Exemplary****Aim:**

To recognise and encourage assets that are inclusive for all its residents.

**Value:**

Ensures safe and convenient access to and movement around the asset for all users.

Ensures assets can accommodate users with the widest range of characteristics and capabilities.

**Hea 13 Radon risk management****2 credits****Aim:**

To encourage an understanding of the risk exposure to radon, recognise where this risk has been mitigated.

**Value:**

Encourages understanding of the radon risk of the asset.

Allows appropriate mitigation measures to be implemented, protecting the health of residents.



## Asset Performance: Hea 01 Daylighting



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To ensure residents have access to good levels of daylight, via windows and/or skylights.

### Question

What is the glazed area as a percentage of the room floor area?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
1	B.	All relevant rooms meet the requirements for 1 credit at their latitude
2	C.	All relevant rooms meet the requirements for 2 credits at their latitude

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Relevant rooms are those where residents will spend a significant amount of time while awake. These include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Living rooms, dining rooms and studies</li> <li>• Eat in kitchens</li> </ul>	B, C
2.	All relevant rooms must meet the requirements in Table 13.	B, C
3.	Calculations to demonstrate compliance are not required for every room. The worst-case scenario can be used to demonstrate the minimum level of performance, with all other room window combinations assumed to score above this.	B, C

### Methodology

**Calculating glazed area as a percentage of occupied room area and assessment against the minimum performance requirements**

The following steps must be followed in order to assess whether the asset demonstrates compliance with the minimum performance requirements.

1. Determine the latitude for the asset's location.
2. Calculate the net internal area ( $m^2$ ) for each relevant room.
3. For each relevant room, calculate the total glazed area ( $m^2$ ) of all windows and rooflights within the space. The frames are not included in the calculation, only the area of glass.
4. For each room, calculate the percentage of glazed area to room area as follows:

$$\text{Percentage glazed area to floor area} = \left( \frac{\text{Total glazed area in room}}{\text{Net internal area of room}} \right) \times 100$$

5. For each room, check if there are any external obstructions (e.g. adjacent buildings or structures, trees or hedges, etc.) that will potentially limit the amount of daylight reaching the room. If there is an obstruction, its distance away from the glazing must be greater than its height above the centre of the glazing. For example, if an obstruction's height is 10 metres above the centre of the glazing, then the obstruction must be at least 10 metres away from the glazing. Where an obstruction does not meet this distance requirement, it is not possible for the room in question to comply with the minimum performance requirements.
6. For each relevant room, compare the glazed area to room area percentage to the minimum performance requirements in Table 13 for the asset's latitude to assess whether the room is compliant or not.

## Checklists and Tables

Table 13: Minimum performance requirements for glazed area as a percentage of occupied room area

Latitude	$< \pm 40^\circ$	$\geq \pm 40^\circ < \pm 45^\circ$	$\geq \pm 45^\circ < \pm 50^\circ$	$\geq \pm 50^\circ < \pm 55^\circ$	$\geq \pm 55^\circ < \pm 60^\circ$	$\geq \pm 60^\circ$
1 credit	$\geq 7\%$	$\geq 8\%$	$\geq 9\%$	$\geq 10\%$	$\geq 10\%$	$\geq 11\%$
2 credits	$\geq 10\%$	$\geq 12\%$	$\geq 14\%$	$\geq 15\%$	$\geq 16\%$	$\geq 16\%$

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1 - 3	Documentation specifying the occupied room area and glazed area and calculations in accordance with the Methodology.
1 - 4	Photographs of building elevations, glazed areas in occupied space and any obstructions.

## Additional information

### Glazed areas and overheating

This assessment issue focuses on the provision of minimum glazed areas for the purposes of allowing good levels of daylight within occupied space. As such, no maximum limit has been stipulated. However, overheating in a space can be a problem if glazed areas are too large.



## Asset Performance: Hea 02 Minimising overheating from solar gain



Credits

No Minimum Standard

Applicability: All projects

### Aim

To recognise and encourage external shading features that minimise overheating from solar gain.

### Question

Are there external shading features that minimise overheating from solar gain?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>Potentially compliant external shading features include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Building-integrated measures, e.g. overhangs or fins.</li> <li>• External shading or brise soleil.</li> <li>• The asset's form or layout mitigates the potential for glare from sunlight, e.g. adjacent buildings provide adequate shade, north facing side windows for locations in the northern hemisphere, etc.</li> <li>• A combination of the above.</li> </ul>	C
2.	<p>External shading features are required on all windows of Homes and Apartment units, where there is a risk of overheating. They are also required in any communal areas that are considered an occupied space, e.g. a building management office, and any communal areas that are considered occupied space, where there is a risk of overheating.</p>	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	Photographic evidence of external shading features.

## Definitions

### Occupied space:

A room or space within the asset that is likely to be continuously occupied for 30 minutes or more per day by an asset user.

## Additional information

### Solar shading guidance:

The BRE report 'BR 364 Solar shading of buildings (Second edition)' published in 2018 by IHS Markit provides guidance on commonly used glare control features and shading devices and can be used to help find the best solution for a given building application.



## Asset Performance: Hea 03 Internal and external lighting levels



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects – Answers C and D apply to Apartments only

### Aim

To ensure appropriate lighting is provided to enable residents to perform visual tasks efficiently and accurately.

### Question

Do internal and external lighting levels meet best practice illuminance (lux) levels?

Credits	Answer	Select either B, C or D, Answer E can be selected independently
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes, ≥50% of occupied communal spaces meets best practice illuminance (lux) levels for internal lighting
2	D.	Yes, ≥80% of occupied communal spaces meets best practice illuminance (lux) levels for internal lighting
2	E.	Yes, ≥80% of relevant external space meets best practice illuminance (lux) levels for external lighting

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p><b>Filtering</b></p> <p>The external lighting credits can be filtered out in the following circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Where no external light fittings are installed (either separate from or mounted on the external asset's façade or roof) and external lighting is not required for safety or task performance reasons.</li> <li>OR</li> <li>b) External spaces are not within scope of the assessment.</li> </ul>	C, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	<p>For the purposes of this assessment issue, the following standards are considered to contain best practice illuminance (lux) levels:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Society of Light and Lighting (SLL), Code for Lighting, 2012.</li> <li>• Illuminating Engineering Society (IES), The Lighting Handbook 10<sup>th</sup> Edition, 2011.</li> </ul> <p>Alternatively, where local standards have similar requirements to any of the above standards, the local standard may be used to demonstrate compliance with this criterion.</p>	C, D
3.	<p>Illuminance levels are measured in occupied spaces by a suitably qualified person in accordance with the procedure(s) in the relevant best practice standard (criterion 2). Where the best practice standard does not stipulate procedures for measuring illuminance, the procedure in the Methodology section must be followed. If during measurement light fittings need to be added or removed, or covered, in an occupied space to achieve the best practice illuminance levels, the occupied space would not comply with the criteria.</p>	C, D
4.	<p>External spaces within the scope of the external lighting requirements include, but are not limited to, the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Walkways exclusively for pedestrians</li> <li>• Traffic areas for slowly moving vehicles (maximum 10 km/h), e.g. bicycles, trucks and excavators</li> <li>• Regular vehicle traffic (maximum 40 km/h)</li> <li>• Vehicle turning, loading and unloading points</li> <li>• Parking areas.</li> </ul>	E

## Methodology

### Procedure for measuring illuminance

The suitably qualified person must confirm that they have used either the illuminance verification procedure(s) stipulated within the relevant best practice standard (criterion 2) or where the best practice standard does not stipulate procedures for measuring illuminance, the following procedure:

- Illuminance measurements should be undertaken using calibrated illuminance meters with a photocell that is both colour/spectrally and cosine corrected. The deviation of the calibration values as per the calibration certificate should be applied when analysing the measurement results. Additionally, it should be checked that the ambient temperature during the measurements does not depart markedly from the ambient temperature for which the photocell had been calibrated (typically, this is 25°C); if this is the case, then the measured values should also be corrected for ambient temperature.
- Illuminance meters with an integrated photocell should be checked for the correct levelling on the measurement surface. In case of illuminance meters that have a detachable photocell, the photocell should be secured inside a specially designed holder and the holder should be checked for the correct levelling on the measurement surface.

- The mains voltage supply in the test areas should be stable during measurements.
- It should be checked that there are no unusual temperature differences between different zones of the test areas. The artificial lighting should also be kept on long enough so that its light output stabilises (e.g. at least 20 minutes for fluorescent, discharge or LED lighting).
- Indoor illuminance measurements should be carried out so that daylight penetration is avoided completely whilst taking the readings. In spaces with windows, illuminance measurements would ideally be undertaken after dusk; if blinds are fitted, these should be closed in order to minimise any potential stray light from buildings nearby and external lighting. Measurements of outdoor illuminance should be carried out when it is fully dark and in good weather conditions.
- Items within the measurement areas should be kept to a level that would be expected during normal use. Additionally, the Assessor should be far enough away from the photocell, ideally below its height if possible, to avoid casting shadows or preventing light from being reflected onto the photocell.
- Illuminance measurements are normally required to assess average illuminance or illuminance uniformity on the working plane or other task areas that can be horizontal, vertical or inclined. In existing buildings, task areas, e.g. kitchen work surfaces, are generally known. In an open task area, a grid of measurement points should be set out. The distance between the measurement points  $p$  is calculated using the formula:

$$p = 0.2 \times 5^{(\log_{10} d)}$$

- Where  $d$  is the length of the longer dimension of the area being measured, and thus the number of points in the relevant dimension is given by the nearest whole number of  $d/p$ . The resulting spacing between the grid points is used to calculate the nearest whole number of grid points in the other dimension. Once illuminance is measured at each grid point, average illuminance can be determined as the arithmetic mean of the measured values. Illuminance uniformity can be calculated as the ratio of the minimum illuminance (as measured) to the average illuminance (as calculated).
- A perimeter zone of 0.5 m from the walls can be excluded from the measurement area except when a task area is in or extends into this perimeter zone.
- An appropriate grid size for walls and ceilings can be calculated similarly, and a band of 0.5 m can also be used.
- Alternatively, spot readings of illuminance may be taken. This is acceptable practice where measurement grids cannot be defined due to the presence of obstructions in the measured areas.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1 - 4	Documentation confirming the illuminance levels in occupied space meet the best practice levels and have been measured in accordance with the 'Procedure for measuring illuminance' (see Methodology).

## Definitions

### Illuminance

The amount of light falling on a surface per unit area, measured in lux.

**Occupied space**

A room or space within the asset that is likely to be continuously occupied for 30 minutes or more per day by an asset user.

**Suitably qualified person**

Someone that has demonstrable experience in undertaking lighting measurements in internal and external spaces.



## Asset Performance: Hea 04 Lighting control



Credits

No Minimum Standard

### Applicability: n/a

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.



## Asset Performance: Hea 05 Minimising flicker from lighting systems



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Apartments only

### Aim

To encourage the installation of lighting systems that minimise the impact of flicker on asset users.

### Question

Do lighting installations in communal areas and management offices have features that minimise or prevent flicker?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes, ≥ 50% of lighting installations have features that minimise or prevent flicker
2	D.	Yes, all lighting installations have features that minimise or prevent flicker

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	The number of credits awarded should be based on the proportion of lighting installations with features that minimise or prevent flicker compared to the total number of lighting installations.	C, D
2.	<p>The following are examples of lighting installations that are considered to contain features that minimise or prevent flicker:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Fluorescent and gas discharge lighting where the light is controlled by electronic high frequency control gear.</li> <li>b) LED lighting without dimming.</li> <li>c) LED lighting with dimming where dimming occurs through controlling the current.</li> <li>d) Incandescent lighting, e.g. halogen lamps.</li> </ul>	C, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	Where Digital Addressable Lighting Interface (DALI) or similar systems are used to dim LED lighting, evidence must be provided to demonstrate that the LED products do not flicker.	

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Visual inspection and photographic evidence by the Assessor that the installed lighting meets the criteria.
All	Technical specifications for the installed lighting.

## Definitions

### High frequency control gear:

Device connected between the supply and one or more discharge lamps which serves mainly to limit the current of the lamp(s) to the required value. Control gear may also include means for transforming the supply voltage, correcting the power factor and, either alone or in combination with a starting device, provide the necessary conditions for starting the lamp.

### Flicker:

Impression of unsteadiness of visual sensation induced by a light stimulus whose luminance or spectral distribution fluctuates with time.



## Asset Performance: Hea 06 View out



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To allow residents the opportunity for the refreshment and relaxation afforded by a view out preferably of a natural outdoor environment.

### Question

Do relevant rooms have an adequate external view out?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, all relevant rooms have window or permanent opening providing an adequate view out.

Does the view out provide a view of a natural outdoor environment?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	D.	Question not answered
0	E.	No
1	F.	Yes, 50% of relevant rooms have a view of a natural outdoor environment
2	G.	Yes, 80% of relevant rooms have a view of a natural outdoor environment

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>Relevant rooms are those where residents will spend a significant amount of time while awake. These include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Living rooms, dining rooms and studies</li> <li>• Kitchens with spaces for eating</li> </ul>	All

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	<p>Relevant spaces should be within 8m horizontal distance from a window or permanent opening providing a view out. The area of the window or opening must be at least 20% of the surrounding wall area. The view out must be a view of a landscape or buildings (rather than just the sky) at seated eye level (1.2–1.3m) within the relevant space and should ideally be through an external window. A view into an internal courtyard or atrium will comply provided the distance from the opening to the back wall of the courtyard or atrium is at least 10m.</p>	C, D
3.	<p>The view of nature should be determined at seated eye level (1.2–1.3 m) at a central point of the window at least 1 m back from the opening.</p>	F, G
4.	<p>Assessors will need to use their judgement to determine if the natural outdoor environment is sufficiently large or close to the home to provide a benefit to the residents.</p> <p>The following examples provide some guidance on what would be considered acceptable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Gardens attached to the home</li> <li>• Local parks, streams or sports fields within the neighbourhood</li> <li>• Forests, deserts or lakes within the middle distance</li> <li>• Views of mountains or seas in the distance</li> </ul>	F, G

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	<p>The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.</p>
1	Floor plans illustrating the windows areas for each relevant room.
2	Photographic evidence of the view of nature.

## Definitions

### Natural outdoor environment:

The view of a natural outdoor environment should contain at least one of the following: Greenspace Natural landscapes such as: deserts, mountains Bodies of water such as; rivers, lakes, reservoirs and seas.

### Greenspace:

An area of grass, trees, or other vegetation set apart for recreational or aesthetic purposes.



## Asset Performance: Hea 07 User comfort control, and maintenance



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To recognise the provision of ventilation systems that are easy to control and maintain by residents, so improving effectiveness, usability, and avoiding problems with humidity. To recognise the provision of temperature controls for residents, improving comfort and efficiency.

### Question

Are residents able to control and maintain the ventilation system?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

Are residents able to control the heating/cooling system effectively?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	D.	Question not answered
0	E.	No
1	F.	Yes, Residents can adjust the heating/cooling systems in different rooms independently

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>Ventilation controls for background ventilators and intermittent extract fans, and passive stack ventilation (PSV) systems</p> <p>Extractor fans in wet and drying rooms shall be controlled by a humidity sensor (which may be built into the extractor fan unit) in accordance with manufacturer's literature, in addition to a light switch control where required by building regulations (e.g. rooms with WCs).</p>	C
2.	<p>Ventilation controls for continuous mechanical extract (MEV), and continuous mechanical supply and extract with heat recovery (MVHR) systems</p> <p>A ventilation system that has the ability to be manually boosted by the home occupant when required i.e. increase in humidity levels in the bathroom due to showering or bathing activities taking place and an information sign explaining when to activate and deactivate the boost function</p> <p>OR</p> <p>A ventilation system that has the ability to be automatically activate boost mode when there are increased humidity levels in the bathroom due to showering or bathing activities taking place. The system should prevent activation as a result of abnormally high levels of naturally occurring background humidity (such as can occur on a humid summer's evening)</p>	C
3.	For mechanical continuous ventilation systems (e.g. MVHR, MEV), controls are provided that enable sufficient control of the background continuous ventilation rate to meet varying occupancy levels without having to enable 'boost' mode.	C
4.	Any maintenance activity intended to be carried out by the occupant (e.g. changing filters) can be carried out safely by the occupant without the need for specialist tools.	C
5.	<p>Residents should be able to turn heating systems up and down, rather than just on or off, in the following room types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Living rooms</li> <li>• Dining rooms</li> <li>• Kitchens</li> <li>• Bedrooms</li> </ul>	F

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
6.	<p>Compliant forms of temperature control include, but are not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Room thermostats</li> <li>b) Thermostatic radiator valves (TRVs)</li> <li>c) Fan coil units with user control</li> <li>d) Building Management System controlled set points with local override controls limited to a set range.</li> </ul>	F

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1 - 3	<p>For mechanically ventilation system controls: -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Manufacturer's information confirming the method of control.</li> <li>b. Photographic evidence showing the method of control.</li> </ul>
4	Photographic evidence showing access for maintenance
5, 6	Photographic evidence showing the method and location of control of the heating/cooling system

## Definitions

### Wet room

A room used for domestic activities (such as cooking, clothes washing and bathing) which give rise to significant production of airborne moisture, e.g. a kitchen, utility room or bathroom. For the purposes of BREEAM In-Use, drying space is also regarded as a wet room.



## Asset Performance: Hea 08 Ventilation system air intakes and exhausts



Credits

No Minimum Standard

Applicability: All projects

### Aim

To ensure that the asset's ventilation system minimises the entry of external sources of air pollution.

### Question

Are ventilation system air intakes and exhausts located to minimise the entry of air pollutants into the asset?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>For assets with air-conditioned or mixed-mode ventilation systems:</p> <p>EITHER</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) The location of the asset's air intakes and exhausts, in relation to each other and to sources of external pollution, are in accordance with either of the following standards:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sections 8.8.2-8.8.4 of PD CEN/TR 16798-4:2017 Energy performance of buildings - Ventilation for buildings - Part 4: Interpretation of the requirements in EN 16798-3</li> <li>• Section 5.5 and Normative Appendix B of ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2016 Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality</li> </ul> </li> <p>OR</p> <li>b) The asset's air intakes are positioned at least 10m horizontal distance from sources of external pollution, including the location of air exhausts from the asset and other buildings. Exhausts or other</li> </ul>	C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	pollutant sources are not be discharged into enclosed external spaces, such as courtyards, in which intakes are also located.	
2.	For naturally ventilated assets, background ventilators and openable windows, skylights and doors are positioned at least 10 m horizontal distance from sources of external pollution, including the location of air exhausts from other buildings.	C
3.	Homes have an information sign (written in plain language) securely fixed to the rear of a boiler, meter or airing cupboard door (or another door of similar permanence) providing information on the ventilation system	C

## Methodology

### Pollutant dispersion modelling

If compliance cannot be demonstrated using the methods stipulated in the assessment criteria, it may be feasible to demonstrate compliance using pollutant dispersion modelling if this shows that, under normal asset operational and typical external environmental conditions, the location of the asset's air intakes and exhausts in relation to each other and sources of external pollution minimises the entry of air pollutants into the asset. This can be achieved using either wind tunnel modelling or numerical modelling. Pollutant dispersion modelling in urban areas is complex, so it is important that the person carrying out the modelling is a competent individual.

### Jet exhaust systems

Jet exhaust systems may be used as an alternative method of demonstrating compliance with criterion 1 if evidence from pollutant dispersion modelling demonstrates that the location and separation of air intakes and the jet exhausts, the jet exhaust nozzle direction, and the average jet exhaust velocity prevents significant recirculation of exhaust air under typical wind conditions.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Documentation (e.g. plans, photographs or scaled drawings of the asset) showing the location of air intakes and exhausts and external sources of pollution and the distances between them.

## Definitions

### Competent individual – wind tunnel modelling:

An individual with the following qualifications and experience:

- Holds a degree or equivalent qualification in a relevant engineering field (mechanical, chemical), physics, mathematics, or meteorology AND holds a membership of an appropriate professional body.
- Has a minimum of three years relevant experience, which must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding and experience of wind tunnel modelling and factors affecting outdoor pollutant dispersion in relation to ventilation and the built environment.

**Competent individual – numerical modelling:**

An individual with one or more of the following qualifications and experience:

- Holds a degree or equivalent qualification in a relevant engineering field (mechanical, chemical), physics, mathematics, meteorology, environmental sciences, environmental engineering or a related environmental discipline, AND holds a membership of an appropriate professional body,
- Demonstrable ability to interpret environmental guidelines, policies, plans and legislative requirements.

**Numerical modelling:**

A computer-based stimulation method for modelling pollutant dispersion and air quality in the outdoor environment. Various numerical models are commercially available which may be used to investigate the location of ventilation intakes and exhausts, including those based on empirical methods and computational fluid dynamics (CFD).

**Sources of external pollution:**

These include but are not limited to the following:

- Highways and the main access roads associated with the asset
- Car parks, delivery and vehicle pick-up, drop-off or waiting bays
- Other building-related emissions, including from building services exhausts, industrial or agricultural processes, and external smoking areas.

Service and access roads with restricted and infrequent access, e.g. roads used only for waste collection, are unlikely to represent a significant source of external pollution. These roads can therefore be excluded from assessment.

**Wind tunnel modelling:**

This is a versatile physical technique which allows many variables (for example building design, intake and exhaust positions, local pollutant sources, wind speed and direction), to be investigated for complex urban areas. Wind tunnel modelling provides reliable and detailed data, both visual and quantitative, on outdoor pollution distribution. This enables the effective siting of intakes and exhausts to be evaluated for both mechanically and naturally ventilated buildings.



## Asset Performance: Hea 09 Carbon dioxide sensors



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To encourage the monitoring of internal conditions to ensure a healthy indoor environment is provided.

### Question

Are sensors installed in the asset that monitor the levels of carbon dioxide in indoor air?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, in all regularly occupied space

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>Carbon dioxide sensors are installed as follows:</p> <p>a) In mechanically ventilated spaces, the sensors EITHER:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Are linked to the mechanical ventilation system and provide demand-controlled ventilation to the space. OR</li> <li>• Visibly or audibly alert the residents or building managers when carbon dioxide levels exceed the recommended set point.</li> </ul> <p>b) In naturally ventilated spaces, the sensors can EITHER:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visibly or audibly alert the residents or building managers when carbon dioxide levels exceed the recommended set point. OR</li> <li>• Are linked to controls with the ability to adjust the quantity of fresh air, e.g. automatically open windows or roof vents.</li> </ul>	C
2.	Sensors must be installed, tested, calibrated and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Sensors should be placed to provide representative readings of conditions within each space. Sensors should be	C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	wall-mounted and at a height above floor level that corresponds to an average seated or standing head height for the main activity performed within the space.	
3.	Set points for sensors must not exceed a carbon dioxide concentration of 800 ppm in indoor air.	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of the sensors.
All	Description of how the sensors work in terms of actuating ventilation or alerting users.
All	Operation and maintenance manuals or records for the installed system(s).

## Definitions

### Occupied space:

A room or space within the asset that is likely to be occupied for 30 minutes or more by an asset user. For the purpose of this issue, the definition excludes the following:

- a) Atria or concourses
- b) Entrance halls or reception areas
- c) Ancillary space, e.g. circulation areas, storerooms and plant rooms.



## Asset Performance: Hea 10 Carbon monoxide detection



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To protect asset users from harmful levels of carbon monoxide associated with the asset's combustion appliances and enclosed parking areas.

### Question

Are carbon monoxide detection and alarm systems installed in the asset in spaces that contain combustion appliances and in enclosed parking areas?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes, in all spaces containing combustion appliances
1	D.	Yes, in all enclosed parking areas

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there are no combustion appliances or enclosed parking areas present in the asset, the associated credits can be filtered out of the assessment.	C, D
2.	The carbon monoxide detection system must alert asset users to acute levels of carbon monoxide, therefore enabling users to react before being exposed to a significant risk (rather than monitoring low levels for health purposes). A detection system should consist of: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A carbon monoxide detector in every space containing a combustion appliance, e.g. those used for space and water heating and cooking.</li> </ol>	C, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	<p>b) A carbon monoxide detector in every space where a combustion appliance's flue passes through rooms or space used as sleeping accommodation.</p> <p>c) Carbon monoxide detectors in the asset's enclosed parking areas (where these are within scope of the assessment), e.g. underground car parks.</p>	
3.	<p>Carbon monoxide detector/alarm systems must be permanently installed. They may be self-contained detector and alarm units powered by a battery designed to operate for the working life of the detector or they may be connected to the asset's electricity supply, either with a built-in sounder or connected to a central control panel. The detector should incorporate a warning device to alert asset users when the working life of the detector is due to expire or, if connected to the electricity supply, fitted with a sensor failure warning device.</p>	C, D
4.	<p>Carbon monoxide detection systems must be installed and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and must be suitable for application in the relevant asset type and space. Detectors intended for application in residential assets may be used where manufacturer's instructions state that the detectors can also be used for commercial application within the asset type under assessment.</p>	C, D
5.	<p>Carbon monoxide detectors that are in spaces or areas that asset users will not normally frequent, for example, those located within boiler rooms or car parks, should be linked to a visual or audible alarm or control panel sited at a staffed location, such as a reception desk.</p>	C, D
6.	<p>The provision of a carbon monoxide detection system should not be regarded as a substitute for the correct installation and regular servicing of a combustion appliance.</p>	C, D
7.	<p>The provision of a carbon monoxide detection system should not be regarded as a substitute for the correct installation and regular servicing of a combustion appliance.</p>	C, D

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	<p>The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.</p>
2 - 6	<p>Photographic evidence of the detection and alarm system(s).</p>
2 - 6	<p>Specifications, procedures or monitoring logs for the detection and alarm system(s).</p>

Criteria	Evidence requirement
2 - 6	Diagrams, photographs or plans indicating location of combustion appliances and enclosed car parks and associated carbon monoxide detectors.
2 - 6	Confirmation from the asset owner or management team where no combustion appliances are installed in the asset or where there are no enclosed parking areas.

## Definitions

### Carbon monoxide:

Carbon monoxide is a colourless, odourless, and tasteless gas. Low levels of carbon monoxide gas can be present in the atmosphere; however, it is highly toxic and dangerous to humans and animals in higher quantities. The gas is produced in high levels from appliances where incomplete combustion of a carbon-based fuel occurs. Incomplete combustion could occur in appliance installations that are defective, lack proper maintenance or have inadequate provision for combustion air.



## Asset Performance: Hea 11 Indoor and/or outdoor space



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To recognise the provision of outdoor recreational space, promoting community spirit, activity and wellbeing.

### Question

Are indoor and outdoor spaces provided for residents?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	The development is within 1 km of a recreational space
2	D.	There is communal space within close proximity to the building
2	E.	Private external space is provided

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Communal space should be of an appropriate size for the number of residents with access. A robust justification would be needed for a space less than 25m <sup>2</sup> .	D
2.	Private balconies or roof terraces should be minimum 4m <sup>2</sup> per apartment.	E
3.	Homes should have a minimum of 25m <sup>2</sup> private external space.	E

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence, demonstrating the indoor/outdoor spaces provided
All	Building/site plans illustrating the private external spaces or Assessor's site inspection report.
All	Annotated map demonstrating the route and distance to Recreational or Communal spaces.

## Definitions

**Safe pedestrian route:** These include, but are not limited to, pavements and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points. An element of Assessor judgement is required and if in doubt, their justification of safe crossing points should be provided.

**Close proximity:** A location no more than 100m (330 ft) from the main entrance to the home via a safe pedestrian route. For apartment buildings the communal entrance of the building can be used. For Individual homes an average distance from each home could be determined, e.g. by taking the mid-point of a row of terraced houses.

**Communal space:** A space that is accessible to the occupants of several homes and clearly associated with the development.

**Private space:** A space that is accessible only to the occupants of an individual home and is accessible directly from the home.

**Recreational space:** Includes the following where they are over 1 hectare (2.5 Acres) in size and are within 1km (0.6 miles) of the home via a safe pedestrian route:

1. Green park spaces - an area of grass, trees, or other vegetation set apart for recreational or aesthetic purposes and that is publicly owned and allows public access during the hours of daylight
2. Woodland
3. Nature reserves or similar.

OR The following where they are within 650m (0.4 miles) of the home:

1. Play park
2. Sports fields
3. Tennis/Basketball or other sport court



## Asset Performance: Hea 12 Inclusive design



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To recognise and encourage assets that are inclusive for all its residents.

### Question

Does the asset contain features to allow all users regardless age, size, ability or disability to use the asset effectively?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No features
1	C.	Yes, limited standard accessibility features
2	D.	Yes, several standard accessibility features
4	E.	Yes, several standard and advanced accessibility (Universal Design) features.
Exemplary	F.	Yes, extensive standard and advanced accessibility (Universal Design) features.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	The asset must contain at least one of the standard accessibility features in each of the four sections of Checklist Hea 12a.	C
2.	The asset must contain at least 50% of the applicable standard accessibility features in each of the four sections of Checklist Hea 12a.	D
3.	The asset must contain at least 50% of the applicable standard accessibility features in each of the four sections of Checklist Hea 12a, plus at least one of the applicable advanced accessibility (Universal Design) features in sections 1 - 2 of Checklist Hea 12b.	E

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
4.	The asset must contain at least 50% of the applicable standard accessibility features in each of the four sections of Checklist Hea 12a, plus at least 50% of the applicable advanced accessibility (Universal Design) features in sections 1 - 2 of Checklist Hea 12b and at least one additional advanced accessibility (Universal Design) feature in accordance with section 4 of Checklist 12b.	F

## Methodology

### Compliant features

Due to the variation in local legislation and design practices for accessibility, usability and inclusivity, the assessment criteria do not stipulate specific design requirements, dimensions or number of each type of feature within the asset. Therefore, compliance with the criteria must be determined by the Assessor's best judgement on what constitutes a reasonable level of provision and design of features for the type, size and number of users of the asset. Assessors may base their judgement using the following best practice guidance:

- ISO 21542:2011 Building construction - Accessibility and usability of the built environment
- BS 8300-1:2018 Design of an accessible and inclusive built environment - Part 1: External environment - Code of practice
- BS 8300-2:2018 Design of an accessible and inclusive built environment - Part 2: Buildings - Code of practice
- Draft prEN 17210 Accessibility and usability of the built environment - Functional requirements
- Building for Everyone: A Universal Design Approach, Centre for Excellence in Universal Design, 2012 (<http://universaldesign.ie/Built-Environment/Building-for-Everyone/>)
- Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Standards, Department of Defense, General Services Administration and U.S. Postal Service, 2015

Alternatively, the Assessor may base their judgment using local standards where these have similar requirements to the above standards.

## Checklists and Tables

### Checklist Hea 12a: Standard accessibility features

		Standard accessibility feature
1. Access to the asset	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Step-free external access (i.e. level, gentle slope or ramp) from the site boundary to the main entrance(s) or alternative accessible entrance of the asset.</li> <li>b) Handrails to external stepped and ramped access routes to the main entrance(s) or alternative accessible entrance of the asset.</li> <li>c) Entrance doors that are accessible to all users, particularly persons who use wheelchairs and those with limited physical dexterity, and are wide enough when open to allow unrestricted passage for a variety of users, e.g. those in wheelchairs, people carrying luggage, people with assistance pets, and parents with pushchairs and small children.</li> </ul>	

	<b>Standard accessibility feature</b>
	d) Where car parking is provided for the asset, designated parking spaces for persons with disabilities are as close as possible to the main entrance(s) of the asset.
2. Horizontal and vertical circulation	a) Corridors and passageways that are wide enough to allow all persons to pass through unimpeded or turn in a wheelchair. b) Internal doors that are easy to operate and wide enough to allow free passage for all persons, including those in wheelchairs. c) Handrails for internal stairs, steps and ramps. d) Accessible lift(s) or vertical and inclined lifting platforms that reach all accessible levels of the asset. e) Accessible horizontal and vertical emergency evacuation routes (e.g. in the event of fire) and facilities (e.g. evacuation chairs) or a strategy and plan for assisted evacuation.
3. Use of the asset's facilities	a) Power-operated entrance door(s) (e.g. via push pad or motion sensor). b) Controls and switches (e.g. door handles and locks, taps, activation devices, electric outlets and switches, etc.) that are easy to understand and operate, visible and at a suitable height. c) Where drinking water outlets are provided for asset users, outlets are accessible to persons with disabilities including those who use wheelchairs (a minimum of one per floor for regularly occupied areas). d) Where the asset contains audience and spectator facilities, e.g. entertainment facilities (e.g. cinemas, etc.) and sports facilities, accessible space and seating for persons who use wheelchairs, those with mobility and sensory impairment and their companions. e) Where sleeping accommodation is provided, a proportion of the accommodation is designed for use by persons who use wheelchairs.
4. Sanitary accommodation	a) Showers, bathrooms or changing rooms should be easily adaptable for asset users who use wheelchairs, persons with limited mobility, etc.

**Checklist Hea 12b: Advanced accessibility (Universal Design) features**

	<b>Advanced accessibility feature</b>
1. Orientation and wayfinding	a) Well-planned layouts that clearly identify key elements such as entrances, reception areas, sanitary facilities, etc. b) Good lighting conditions with additional illumination at decision points such as access routes, entrances, staircases, lifts, etc. c) Clear information and signage that is legible and easily understood, including availability in different languages where appropriate to the asset's location.

Advanced accessibility feature	
	<p>d) Use of visual contrast and colour to facilitate orientation and navigation, to provide warnings about potential hazards, and to facilitate reading of information and signs.</p> <p>e) Provision of tactile information, e.g. embossed signage, Braille signage, tactile walking surface indicators (TWSI), tactile maps, models and plans, changes in floor surface, changes in level, tapping rails.</p> <p>f) Audible communication and sounds, e.g. talking signs, announcement systems, audio descriptive way-finding information, changes in walking surface.</p> <p>g) Use of scents or smells to provide additional orientation cues.</p>
2. Assistive technologies	<p>a) Hearing enhancement system(s) (e.g. induction loop) at service or reception counters and in rooms and spaces used for meetings, lectures, classes, performances, spectator sport or films.</p> <p>b) Audible information systems.</p> <p>c) Visual alarm systems.</p> <p>d) Voice or touch screen operated controls.</p>
3. Inclusive spaces	<p>a) Assistance animal relief (toilet) area(s).</p> <p>b) Accessible and inclusive fitness spaces and equipment.</p> <p>c) Spaces that promote regular informal social interactions and information exchange with different asset users.</p>
4. Others	As specified within best practice guidance (see 'Compliant features' in Methodology) in addition to those listed above.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of listed features.
All	Building plans outlining installed features.
All	Specifications of installed features.

## Definitions

### Accessibility:

Provision of buildings, parts of buildings, or outdoor built environments for people, regardless of disability, age or gender, to be able to gain access to them, into them, to use them and exit from them.

**Inclusive design:**

Approach to the design of the environment, including buildings and their surrounding spaces, and managed and natural landscapes, to ensure that they can be accessed and used by everyone.

**Universal Design:**

Design of products, environments, programmes and services to be usable by all people, to the greatest extent possible, without the need for adaptation or specialised design. Universal Design does not exclude the need of assistive devices for particular groups or persons with disabilities where relevant. Terms such as "Universal Design", "accessible design", "Design for All", "barrier-free design", "inclusive design" and "transgenerational design" are often used interchangeably with the same meaning.

**Usability:**

Extent to which a product, a service and the built environment can be used by specified users to achieve specified goals with effectiveness, efficiency and satisfaction in a specified context of use.

**Wayfinding:**

Means of ensuring that someone can find their way, avoid obstacles, and know when they have reached their destination.

## Additional information

### Principles of Universal Design

The Principles of Universal Design were developed in 1997 by a working group of architects, product designers, engineers and environmental design researchers at the North Carolina State University, with the purpose "to guide a wide range of disciplines including environments, products and communications". The seven principles "may be applied to evaluate existing designs, guide the design process and educate both designers and consumers about the characteristics of more usable products and environments". The seven principles are:

- Principle 1: Equitable Use - The design is useful and marketable to people with diverse abilities.
- Principle 2: Flexibility in Use - The design accommodates a wide range of individual preferences and abilities.
- Principle 3: Simple and Intuitive Use - Use of the design is easy to understand, regardless of the user's experience, knowledge, language skills, or current concentration level.
- Principle 4: Perceptible Information - The design communicates necessary information effectively to the user, regardless of ambient conditions or the user's sensory abilities.
- Principle 5: Tolerance for Error - The design minimizes hazards and the adverse consequences of accidental or unintended actions.
- Principle 6: Low Physical Effort - The design can be used efficiently and comfortably and with a minimum of fatigue.
- Principle 7: Size and Space for Approach and Use - Appropriate size and space is provided for approach, reach, manipulation, and use regardless of user's body size, posture, or mobility.



## Asset Performance: Hea 13 Radon risk management



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To encourage an understanding of the risk of exposure to radon and to recognise where any risk has been mitigated.

### Question

Is the asset in an area with the potential for elevated indoor level of radon?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
2	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, testing has been carried out but no mitigation measures are required.
0	D.	Yes, testing has been carried out but no mitigation measures are in place.
2	E.	Yes, testing has been carried out and all appropriate mitigation measures are in place.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Where there are no national or regional maps that establish radon affected areas, testing can be carried out to establish if there is a risk.  Testing should be performed in accordance with a nationally recognised procedure or the ISO 11665 series of standards.	All
2.	The radon level at which mitigation measure are required should be determined by national or regional best practice. Where this doesn't exist, the World Health Organisation recommends a radon level <100 Bq/m <sup>3</sup> . Therefore, radon levels above this would require mitigation measures.	All
3.	Mitigation measures should follow National best practice guidance.	C, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
4.	Where mitigation measures have already been installed further testing is not required. The Assessor must confirm that the measures are still in good working order.	E

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	A copy of National or Regional maps of radon affected areas or, where there are none, test results showing the asset's radon level.
2	The radon test results including confirmation that the testing procedure used aligns with the ISO 11665 series of standards.
3	Where the radon level determining when mitigation measures are required differs from the World Health Organisation recommendation, evidence of this determination (e.g. PDF print out of webpage by the national or regional authority documenting the level).
4	<p>Confirmation of the National best practice guidance used to determine mitigation measures or a report by a suitable professional that confirms the mitigation measures are appropriate.</p> <p>AND</p> <p>Photographic evidence of mitigation measures and Assessor's site inspection report confirming that they are still in good working order.</p>

## Additional information

### Guidance on mitigation of Radon risks

The following reference sources provide guidance on commonly used protective measures for radon and may be used to help find the best solution(s) for an asset's situation.

- BR 211, Radon: Guidance on protective measures for new buildings, BRE, 2015

### Radon testing

There are many radon testing laboratories that can send out testing kits that will subsequently be analysed. For example, Public Health England provide Radon Measurement Packs, which can also be sent out internationally. See <https://www.ukradon.org/services> for more information.



## Asset Performance: Energy



### Summary

This category recognises building fabric and installed building services systems that lead to lower operational energy consumption and reduce carbon emissions over the lifetime of the asset. Issues in this section assess the inherent energy efficiency of the building fabric, the energy efficiency of installed services systems and installed renewable energy generation capacity. This category also encourages the installation of energy monitoring and energy management capabilities to support efficient energy management and the avoidance of waste throughout the life of the asset.

### Context

Climate change is the biggest environmental challenge that the world is currently facing. It is already resulting in higher global temperatures, greater risk flooding and more extreme weather events. It is mainly due to rising levels of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, such as methane, in the atmosphere create a 'greenhouse effect', that is causing the Earth to warm. Greenhouse gas emissions have increased by about 45% since before the industrial revolution and this is almost entirely due to human activity.

The observed increase in greenhouse gas emissions is mainly caused by the burning of fossil fuels for energy, agriculture, deforestation and industrial processes. Worldwide, buildings and construction together account of 39% of energy related carbon emissions, the majority of which is due to energy consumption in use. The impact on people and communities from climate change and energy generation must be recognised. Poorer communities are disproportionately impacted by the negative effects of climate change and energy generation from fossil fuels, contributing to poor health, higher mortality rates and higher risks of severe damage from extreme weather events.

The Paris Agreement, ratified in 2016, reflects a desire to accelerate the global response to the threat of climate change by limiting global temperature rise this century to at least 2°C, and preferably 1.5°C, above pre-industrial levels. Subsequently, in October 2018 the urgency of the need to tackle climate change was highlighted by an IPCC Special Report which indicates that it will be necessary to limit this increase to 1.5°C to avoid the most severe impacts of climate change. The report concludes that to limit the increase to 1.5°C CO<sub>2</sub> emissions must reduce by around 45% from 2010 levels by 2030, and to reach net zero emissions by 2050. This scale of reduction will require rapid and far-reaching transitions for all energy systems, including buildings.

It is therefore vital to substantially reduce the total operational energy use in buildings and to increase use of renewable energy sources where possible, if the worse effects of climate change are to be avoided.

Addressing climate change and shifting the way in which we produce and use energy can help address inequities such as fuel poverty that are currently present in our communities and provide a healthy environment for all demographic and economic groups, especially those that are part of less advantaged or underserved communities

## Issues

<b>Ene 01 - 09</b>	<b>Asset energy calculator</b>	<b>40 credits</b>
--------------------	--------------------------------	-------------------

**Aim:**

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by increasing the intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and of installed buildings services.

**Value:**

Identifies assets that are performing poorly compared to their peers and to prompt improvement actions where appropriate.

Identifies areas where there is the most scope for improving energy performance and encourage action where appropriate.

Encourages the specification of more energy efficient fabric and building servicing system components.

Increases energy efficiency and reduce costs relating to operational energy use.

Reduces carbon emissions from operational energy consumption.

<b>Ene 10</b>	<b>Demand side management (DSM) capabilities for electricity</b>	<b>4 Exemplary credits</b>
---------------	--	----------------------------

**Aim:**

To reduce carbon emissions associated with grid supply electricity by enabling electricity demand profiles to better match the availability of renewable electricity generation sources.

**Value:**

Facilitates lower carbon emissions for grid supply electricity.

Reduces electricity costs (marginal cost of renewable generation lower than that for fossil fuelled generation).

<b>Ene 11</b>	<b>Installed controls</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
---------------	---------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To reduce operational energy consumption and associated carbon emissions by installing appropriate controls to reduce unnecessary energy consumption (waste).

**Value:**

Avoids wasting energy.

Increases the operational energy efficiency of the asset.

Reduces energy costs.

Reduces carbon emissions from operational energy consumption.

**Ene 12 Local energy performance asset rating** **3 credits****Aim:**

To recognise operational energy efficiency and carbon benefits associated with benchmarking against a local energy standard.

**Value:**

Identifies assets that are performing poorly compared to their peers and to prompt improvement actions where appropriate.

Recognises the scope and nature of the asset energy performance standard.

Recognise assets that perform better than their peers.

**Ene 13 Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels** **4 credits****Aim:**

To minimise carbon emissions through on-site renewable energy generation from photovoltaic (PV).

**Value:**

Help identify assets that have the potential to install PV energy generation on-site.

Recognise the carbon reduction benefits associated with on-site renewable energy generation technologies.

Reduce reliance on grid supplied electricity.

Reduce operational energy costs.

**Ene 14 Solar thermal panels** **1 credits****Aim:**

To minimise carbon emissions through on-site renewable energy generation from solar thermal.

**Value:**

Helps identify assets that have the potential to install solar thermal energy generation on-site.

Recognises the carbon reduction benefits associated with on-site renewable energy generation technologies.

Reduces reliance on grid supplied electricity.

Reduces operational energy costs.

**Ene 15 Monitoring energy uses** **4 credits****Aim:**

To reduce operational energy consumption through the effective management and monitoring of energy consumption for different building services and building services systems.

**Value:**

Increases awareness of operational energy use in the asset.

Identifies and monitors significant energy uses and changed consumption levels to inform energy management and maintenance procedures.

Encourages the identification and avoidance of unnecessary energy consumption.

Provides more granular information to support the setting of realistic energy consumption improvement targets.

**Ene 16 Monitoring of separate units****2 credits****Aim:**

To reduce operational energy consumption through the effective management and monitoring of energy consumption in separately tenanted areas.

**Value:**

Provides a basic understanding of how much energy is being used in each unit.

Improves health and wellbeing and reduces running costs by using smart devices.

Gives occupants more control in their home to allow it to adapt to their needs.

**Ene 17 External lighting****4 credits****Aim:**

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions from energy efficiency of external lighting.

**Value:**

Identifies whether existing external lighting is energy efficient and to encourage improvement actions to be taken where appropriate.

Increases energy efficiency and reduces costs relating to operational energy use for external lighting.

Reduces carbon emissions from operational energy consumption for external lighting.

**Ene 18 Energy efficient transport systems****2 credits****Aim:**

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions from energy efficient lifts.

**Value:**

Identifies whether existing transport system is energy efficient and to encourage improvement actions to be taken where appropriate

Increases energy efficiency and reduce costs relating to operational energy use for transport systems

Reduces carbon emissions from operational energy consumption for transport systems.

## Asset energy calculator guidance

### Introduction

This section provides further information on the workings of the asset energy calculator. It describes the scope of the asset calculator and how answers to the questions that feed into the asset calculator influence the asset energy performance score.

The asset calculator measures the energy performance that the building is capable of, given its envelope and installed services.

The building services that are considered in the asset calculator are heating, cooling, heating distribution, cooling distribution, lighting, ventilation and hot water. Energy use by other installed building services, e.g. lifts, external lighting and building management systems, is not included in the asset calculator.

The asset energy performance score does not currently take account of the orientation of the building or the local environment around the building, e.g. overshadowing, but does take account of the building geometry.

The asset energy performance score reflects how the asset would be expected to perform compared to another asset with a similar function, e.g. an office, if it were typically operated and had a typical occupancy pattern. For these reasons, the assessed energy performance of the asset is likely to be very different from that calculated for the asset energy performance. If a building service is not present in the assessed asset, the energy consumption for the relevant end use will be zero, but the energy use for the relevant end use will not be removed from the standard version of the asset. This means that the energy performance benefits of naturally ventilated buildings will be recognised.

The asset calculator is valuable for indicating areas where improvements to specific system and fabric components are likely to lead to a significant increase in the assessed energy performance. More detailed consideration of the expected energy benefits associated with specific measures should be undertaken before making improvements to the asset.

### Modelling approach

The energy consumption and hence the annual kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq emissions per m<sup>2</sup> for the asset are calculated using a simplified energy modelling approach.

Instead of carrying out a detailed “bottom up” energy modelling calculation, the BREEAM In-Use asset energy performance score is calculated relative to that expected for a standard asset to determine the end use energy consumption.

This approach avoids the need to explicitly determine the energy service requirements (e.g. internal temperatures and lighting levels), occupancy patterns and climate as these are already included in the BREEAM In-Use benchmarks.

Because the methodology calculates the energy consumption relative to the BREEAM In-Use benchmarks which are based on measured energy consumption data, the asset energy performance scores implicitly take into account typical energy management and building operational practices and will therefore more closely relate to the assessed energy consumption than would be the case for bottom up modelling. The asset energy calculator uses a simplified energy modelling approach. This takes account of the expected energy demands and efficiencies associated with each end use and uses a heat balance approach to take account of factors that affect the demand for heating and cooling. For example, more energy efficient lighting will reduce the internal heat gains within the asset leading to a decreased demand for cooling energy in the summer but increased heating energy use in the winter.

The component and subcomponent elements that contribute to determining the energy consumption for each of the end uses considered in the asset energy calculator are shown in Table 14.

Table 14: The components and subcomponents used to determine end use energy consumption

End use	Component	Subcomponent
Heating	Fabric	Heat transfer through fabric
		Air leakage through fabric
	Internal gains	Solar gains
		Equipment gains
		People
	Heat generator	
Cooling	Fabric	Heat transfer through fabric
		Air leakage
	Internal gains	Solar gains
		Equipment gains
		People
	Free cooling	
	Cooling generator	
Heating distribution/ Cooling distribution/ Ventilation	Pumps	
	Fans	
	Ducts	
	Air Handling Units (AHUs)	
Hot Water	Heat generator efficiency	
Lighting	Efficiency Installed Lamps	
	Installed control systems	

The methodology works by comparing the calculated performance of the assessed asset to that of a standard version of the same asset type. The standard version of the asset represents a typical building specification for an asset constructed in the 1980s and corresponds to the BREEAM In-Use energy benchmark values broken down by end use.

A simplified energy modelling approach is used to calculate how much better (or worse) the assessed asset is expected to perform compared to the standard asset (BREEAM In-Use benchmark). This is achieved by applying improvement factors to each end use which reflect the calculated difference in the energy performance between the assessed and standard asset for each end use. For example, for space heating the efficiency of the heat generator and the rate of heat loss through the building fabric are two factors that contribute to energy consumption.

The end use improvement factors are then applied to benchmark energy consumption to generate the expected energy consumption for the assessed asset as shown in Figure 2.



Figure 2: The relationship between the standard asset (BIU benchmark) and the assessed asset.

## Standard building specification

The standard version of the asset has the same main asset sub type, the same floor area and is in the same location as the asset that is being assessed, but with fixed geometry and fabric, and building services specification that is representative of a typical building in the 1980s. An example of the standard specification for an Individual semi-detached home is shown in Table 15 below

Table 15: Standard building specification for an individual semi-detached home

Type	Parameter	Value
Basic	Percentage of floor area mechanically ventilated	0.1
Fabric	Average U-value of the external walls	0.625
	Average U-value of the roof	0.5
	Average U-value of the glazing	2.32
	Ratio external wall area: floor area	0.385
	Ratio roof area: floor area	0.321
	Ratio glazing area: floor area	0.257
	Ratio internal volume: floor area	0.321
	g value of the glazing	0.5
	External solar shading to reduce excess solar gains during the cooling season	No
Space heating	Air pressure test result (m <sup>3</sup> /h.m <sup>2</sup> @50Pa)	20
	Generation type for space heating	Boiler
	Heat generation efficiency	0.7
	Heat generation fuel	Natural Gas
	Heat supply = district/centralised/local	Centralised
Cooling	Heat distributed around the building via air	Yes
	Main generation type for cooling	Localised (room) air conditioning unit
	Energy efficiency ratio (EER) of the cooling generator	2.5
	Cooling supply = district/centralised/local	Local
	Cooling distributed around the building via air	Yes
	Fans fitted with VSDs	No
Ventilation	Pumps fitted with VSDs	No
	Specific fan power for air handling systems?	3

Type	Parameter	Value
	Ductwork tested for leakage and appropriate remedial action taken	No
Hot water	Type of water heating	Local
	Energy source is used to heat water	Electricity
	Hot water generation efficiency or COP	1
Lighting	Proportion of fluorescent lamps have high frequency ballasts	0%
	Percentage of Compact Fluorescent lamps	0%
	Percentage of Tungsten Halogen lamps	0%
	Percentage Incandescent lamps?	0%
	Percentage of T12 lamps	0%
	Percentage of T8 lamps	100%
	Percentage of T5 lamps	0%
	Percentage of LED lighting (with special design lighting control system)	0%
	Percentage of LED lighting (with typical lighting control system)	0%
	Percentage of metal halide lamps	0%
	Percentage of the building floor area (not accessible to clients/customers) with access to daylight has fully functioning daylight sensors for lighting	0%
	Percentage of the building floor area (not accessible to client/customers) which has fully functioning occupancy sensors for lighting	0%

### Data requirements

The questions in the asset energy category issues Ene 01 to Ene 09 are designed to collect the information needed to carry out the asset energy calculation. As these values can be difficult to determine in many of existing buildings, the calculator uses default values where values are not entered by the user. The default values are based on year of installation where this has been provided, otherwise, year of construction. The default values are country specific and relate to the minimum standards that were prevalent at the time.

The minimum level of user data inputs required to generate an asset energy performance score is the building type, the age of the building and the installed building services. However, entering more information into the calculator will result in a more accurate assessment of the asset energy performance, which will almost always

be better than that generated using default values. The parameter input values for each subcomponent and the source of the information is shown in Table 16 below.

Table 16: Subcomponents, parameters and sources for modelling asset energy performance

Subcomponent	Parameter	Source
Heat transfer through fabric	Average U value of external building envelope	user entry or asset age default value
Air leakage through fabric	Air permeability of external building envelope	user entry or asset age default value
	% heat recovery	user entry or asset age default value
Solar gains	g value and window area	user entry or window age default value
Equipment gains	Annual energy consumption lighting and equipment	Embedded within model
People gains	Standard occupancy for building type	Embedded within model
Efficiency of heat generator	Efficiency or COP	user entry or system age default value
Efficiency of cooling generator	Efficiency or SEER	user entry or system age default value
VSD pumps	Are they present?	user entry or system age default value
VSD fans	Are they present?	user entry or system age default value
Duct leakage rate	Have they been tested?	user entry or system age default value
AHU leakage rate	Have they been tested?	user entry or system age default value
Efficiency of hot water generation	Efficiency or COP	user entry or system age default value
Efficiency of hot water distribution	Hot water type	user entry or system age default value
Efficiency Installed Lamps	% lamp types	user entry or default value
Installed control systems	% floor area with controls	user entry or default value

## Asset energy performance score

The asset energy performance score, and hence the number of credits awarded, is calculated by comparing the calculated kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq emissions per m<sup>2</sup> for the assessed asset compared to that of the BREEAM In-Use benchmark value.

The performance scale is designed so that the median value for BREEAM In-Use assets will achieve 50% of BREEAM In-Use credits.

As well as generating an asset energy performance score, a report is generated which shows the calculated value for carbon emissions broken down by end use, along with indicators which identify the energy performance improvement potential associated with each end use and end use component compared to that of a best practice version of the asset. See Table 17 below.

Table 17: Best practice asset specification

Type	Parameter	Value
Basic	Percentage of floor area mechanically ventilated	10%
Fabric	Average U-value of the external walls	0.2
	Average U-value of the roof	0.2
	Average U-value of the glazing	0.7
	Ratio external wall area: floor area	0.385
	Ratio roof area: floor area	0.321
	Ratio glazing area: floor area	0.257
	Ratio internal volume: floor area	0.321
	g value of the glazing	0.5
	External solar shading to reduce excess solar gains during the cooling season	No
Space heating	Air pressure test result (m <sup>3</sup> /h.m <sup>2</sup> @50Pa)	20
	Generation type for space heating	Boiler
	Heat generation efficiency	0.7
	Heat generation fuel	Natural Gas
	Heat supply = district/centralised/local	Centralised
Cooling	Heat distributed around the building via air	Yes
	Main generation type for cooling	Localised (room) air conditioning unit
	Energy efficiency ratio (EER) of the cooling generator	2.5

Type	Parameter	Value
	Cooling supply = district/centralised/local	Local
	Cooling distributed around the building via air	Yes
	Fans fitted with VSDs	No
	Pumps fitted with VSDs	No
Ventilation	Specific fan power for air handling systems	3
	Ductwork tested for leakage and appropriate remedial action taken	No
Hot water	Type of water heating	Point of use
	Energy source used to heat water	Electricity
	Hot water generation efficiency or COP	1
Lighting	Proportion of fluorescent lamps with high frequency ballasts	0%
	Percentage of Compact Fluorescent lamps	0%
	Percentage of Tungsten Halogen lamps	0%
	Percentage Incandescent lamps	0%
	Percentage of T12 lamps	0%
	Percentage of T8 lamps	100%
	Percentage of T5 lamps	0%
	Percentage of LED lighting (with special design lighting control system)	0%
	Percentage of LED lighting (with typical lighting control system)	0%
	Percentage of metal halide lamps	0%
	Percentage of the building floor area (not accessible to clients/customers) with access to daylight which has fully functioning daylight sensors for lighting	0%
	Percentage of the building floor area (not accessible to client/customers) which has fully functioning occupancy sensors for lighting	0%

## Calculating improvement end use energy consumption

This section describes how the end use improvement factors are calculated for each end use.

### Space heating

The simplified energy modelling approach for space heating is shown below in Figure 3.

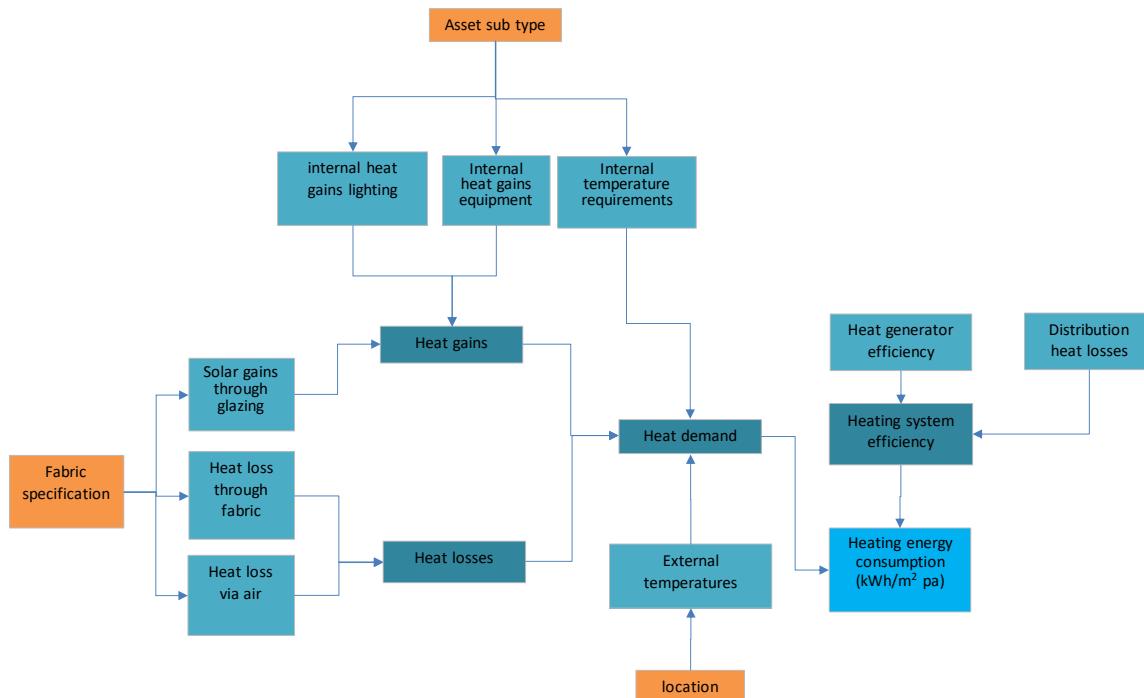


Figure 3: Schematic of the simplified energy modelling approach for space heating

### Heating demand

The demand for space heating is determined by the difference between the internal and external temperature over the heating season. As this will be the same for both the standard and the assessed asset this is not explicitly calculated within the asset calculator.

### Heating generator efficiency

The efficiency of the heat generator affects the amount of energy needed to meet the heat demand, where a heat generator with a higher efficiency will result in a lower energy consumption. The heat generator efficiency improvement factor is therefore determined by:

$$\text{Heat generator improvement factor} = (1/\text{efficiency}_{\text{asset}})/(1/\text{efficiency}_{\text{std}})$$

### Heating system efficiency

The efficiency of the space heating system includes the heat generator efficiency and any distribution losses. The asset calculator assumes that there will be no heat losses associated with local generation systems, and applies a 10% heat loss for centralised systems and a 20% heat loss for district heating systems.

$$\text{Heating system efficiency improvement factor} = \text{Heat generation improvement factor} \times \\ (1 + \text{losses}_{\text{asset}})/(1 + \text{losses}_{\text{std}})$$

### Heating loss through fabric

Heat loss through fabric is determined as the surface area weighted average U-value for the external fabric and is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Surface area weighted U-value} = \text{U-value}_{\text{wall}} \times \text{Area}_{\text{wall}}/\text{Area}_{\text{total}} + \text{U-value}_{\text{roof}} \times \text{Area}_{\text{roof}}/\text{Area}_{\text{total}} + \text{U-value}_{\text{glazing}} \times \text{Area}_{\text{glazing}}/\text{Area}_{\text{total}}$$

The improvement factor for heat loss through the fabric is determined by the ratio of the surface area weighted average of the U-values across all fabric elements (external walls, roofs and windows) for the assessed and the standard asset.

$$\text{Fabric heat loss improvement factor} = \text{Surface area weighted U-value}_{\text{asset}} / \text{Surface area weighted U-value}_{\text{std}}$$

### Heating losses via air

This comprises air infiltration through the building envelope and the ventilation requirements of the building occupants.

Air infiltration through the building envelope is determined by the air permeability of the building fabric, and the ratio of surface area to volume for the building envelope as air changes per hour.

$$\text{Infiltration heat loss} = \text{air changes per hour} \times \text{internal volume} \times (1\% \text{heat recovery})$$

$$\text{Air changes per hour} = (\text{air permeability of the external envelope} \times \text{surface area/volume})/20$$

Ventilation requirements for an asset are the number of air changes per hour required by the expected occupant density which is determined by the asset sub type. Therefore, this will be the same for both the asset and the standard version of the asset. However, where there is mechanical ventilation the % heat recovery from exhaust air needs to be taken into account as follows:

$$\text{Air heat loss} = \text{infiltration changes per hour} + \text{ventilation air changes per hour} \times (1\% \text{heat recovery})$$

$$\text{Air heat loss improvement factor} = \text{heat loss via air}_{\text{asset}} / \text{heat loss via air}_{\text{std}}$$

### Internal heat gains

Internal heat gains arise from equipment, lighting, building occupants and from solar gains through glazing.

As the asset energy calculator only considers the efficiency of the fabric and installed building services, the heat gains from equipment in the assessed asset are assumed to be the same as for the standard building. The asset calculation therefore only explicitly considers the differences in lighting energy efficiency and solar gains. However, the overall internal gains improvement factors take into account the relative contribution each type of internal gains makes to the total for the standard version of the asset.

The lighting efficiency for both the asset and the standard version of the asset are calculated based on the average efficiency of lamp types installed with additional % energy saving applied where lighting controls are fitted. Solar gains through glazing will depend on the glazed area, the orientation of the windows, the amount of sunlight incident on the windows and the g value of the glazing (which relates to the proportion of heat transferred). The asset energy performance calculator currently only takes account of the ratio of glazed area and the g value of the glazing.

$$\text{Total heat gains} = \text{equipment gains} + \text{people gains} + \text{lighting gains} + \text{solar gains}$$

Where

- Equipment gains = equipment energy use
- People gains = occupants per m<sup>2</sup> x 10 kW per person x annual occupancy hours
- Lighting gains = lighting energy use

- Solar gains  $\propto$  window area \* g value glazing \* shading factor

The assumed equipment and people gains are determined by the benchmark energy consumption values and typical occupation densities for the relevant asset subtype. Therefore, they will be the same for the asset and the standard version of the asset, so only the improvements in lighting efficiency and solar gains need to be explicitly considered. These values are determined as follows:

$$\text{Lighting improvement factor} = (1/\text{lighting efficiency}_{\text{asset}})/(1/\text{lighting efficiency}_{\text{std}})$$

$$\text{Solar gains improvement factor} = \text{solar gains}_{\text{asset}} / \text{solar gains}_{\text{std}}$$

$$\text{Total heat gains improvement factors} = \% \text{ solar gains} \times \text{solar gains improvement factor} + \% \text{ lighting gains} \times \text{lighting efficiency improvement} + \% \text{ equipment gains} + \% \text{ people gains}$$

### **Heating distribution losses**

A distribution improvement factor is applied which reflect the typical or (actual where provided for district heating) losses associated local, centralised and district heating systems

$$\text{Distribution improvement factor} = \text{distribution loss for standard building system type} / \text{distribution loss for actual building system type} \times \text{distribution loss improvement factor}$$

The overall heating improvement factor is then calculated by multiplying the component heating improvement factors identified above.

$$\text{Overall heating improvement factor} = \text{heat generation improvement factor} \times (\text{fabric heat loss improvement factor} + \text{air heat loss improvement factor}) \times \text{total heat gains improvement factor} \times \text{distribution loss improvement factor}$$

### **Energy and carbon emissions from space heating**

Energy consumption for space heating is then calculated based on the heating improvement factor as follows:

$$\text{Asset heating energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year)} = \text{Heating improvement factor} \times \text{benchmark heating energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year)}$$

$$\text{Asset heating carbon emissions (kgCO}_2\text{eq/m}^2\text{)} = \text{Asset heating energy use} \times \text{fuel CO}_2 \text{ emission factor} = \text{Asset heating carbon emissions (kgCO}_2\text{eq/m}^2\text{)}$$

### **Cooling**

The simplified energy modelling approach for cooling is shown below in Figure 4.

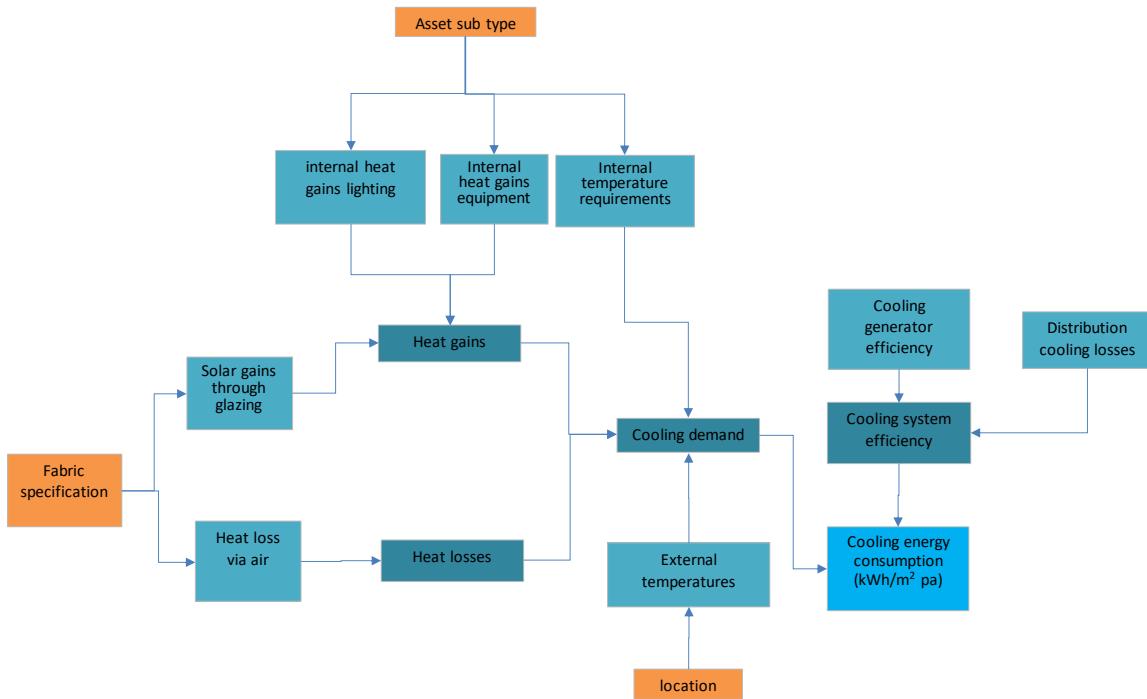


Figure 4: Schematic of the simplified energy modelling approach for space cooling

### Cooling demand

The demand for cooling is determined by the difference between the internal and external temperature over the cooling season and the annual number of cooling hours. As this will be the same for both the standard and the assessed asset this is not explicitly calculated.

### Cooling generator efficiency

The efficiency of the cooling generator affects the amount energy needed to meet the cooling demand, where a cooling generator with a higher efficiency will result in a lower energy consumption. The cooling generator efficiency improvement factor is therefore determined by:

$$\text{Cooling generator improvement factor} = 1/\text{efficiency}_{\text{asset}} / 1/\text{efficiency}_{\text{std}}$$

### Internal heat gains

Internal heat gains are calculated as described for space heating, except for solar gains where the improvement factor also includes a shading factor:

$$\text{Solar gains} \propto \text{window area} \times g \text{ value glazing} \times \text{shading factor}$$

$$\text{Overall heat loss improvement factors} = \% \text{ solar gains} \times \text{solar gains improvement factor} + \% \text{ lighting gains} \times \text{lighting efficiency improvement} + \% \text{ equipment gains} + \% \text{ people gains}$$

### Cooling distribution losses

Calculated as for heating distribution losses

### Overall cooling improvement

The overall cooling improvement factor is then calculated by multiplying the component cooling improvement factors identified above.

$$\text{Overall cooling improvement factor} = \text{cooling generation improvement factor} \times \text{overall reduction in heat loss improvement factor} \times \text{cooling distribution loss improvement factor}$$

## Energy and carbon emissions from cooling

Energy consumption for cooling is then calculated based on the cooling improvement factor as follows:

$$\text{Asset cooling energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year}) = \text{Overall cooling improvement factor} \times \text{benchmark cooling energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year)}$$

$$\text{Asset cooling carbon emissions (kgCO}_2\text{eq/m}^2 \text{ per year}) = \text{Asset cooling energy use} * \text{fuel CO}_2 \text{ emission factor}$$

## Mechanical ventilation

The demand for ventilation in the building is implicitly included in the BREEAM In-Use energy benchmark so the improvement for mechanical ventilation is determined by the relative system efficiencies and the percentage of asset floor area that is treated compared to the standard building.

### Mechanical ventilation system efficiency

The mechanical ventilation system efficiency is determined by the fan efficiency and the ductwork losses and the improvement factor is determined as follows:

$$\text{Mechanical ventilation system improvement factor} = \text{Fan efficiency improvement factor} \times \text{ductwork improvement factor}$$

Where:

$$\text{Fan efficiency improvement factor} = ((\% \text{ fans with VSDs} \times 0.75) + (1 - \% \text{ fans without VSDs})) \times \text{SFP actual} / \text{SFP standard building}$$

$$\text{Ductwork improvement factor} = (1 - \text{asset ductwork factor}) / (1 - \text{standard building ductwork factor})$$

## Adjustment for floor area

$$\text{Mechanically ventilated floor area adjustment} = \% \text{ asset with mechanical ventilation} / \% \text{ standard building with mechanical ventilation}$$

## Overall mechanical ventilation efficiency

$$\text{Overall mechanical ventilation improvement factor} = \text{mechanical ventilation system improvement factor} \times \text{floor area adjustment factor}$$

## Energy and carbon emissions from mechanical ventilation

$$\text{Asset mechanical ventilation energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year}) = \text{Overall mechanical improvement factor} \times \text{benchmark cooling energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year)}$$

$$\text{Asset mechanical ventilation carbon emissions (kgCO}_2\text{eq/m}^2 \text{ per year}) = \text{Asset mechanical ventilation energy use} * \text{fuel CO}_2 \text{ emission factor}$$

## Distribution of heating and cooling by air

The improvement factor for air distribution of heating and cooling systems is calculated using the same formulae as the mechanical ventilation system improvement factor.

For heating and cooling systems with liquid distribution systems the improvement factor is determined based on the proportion of pumps with VSDs as follows:

$$\text{Pump efficiency improvement factor} = ((\% \text{ pump with VSDs} \times 0.75) + (1 - \% \text{ pumps without VSDs}))$$

## Energy and carbon emissions from heating and cooling distribution

$$\text{Asset distribution of heating and cooling energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year}) = \text{fan or pump efficiency improvement factors} \times \text{benchmark distribution of heating and cooling energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year)}$$

*Asset distribution of heating and cooling carbon emissions (kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq/m<sup>2</sup> per year) = Asset mechanical ventilation energy use \* fuel CO<sub>2</sub> emission factor*

## Lighting

The lighting end use is determined by the average lighting level in the building, which is implicitly included in the BREEAM In-Use benchmark. The improvement factor for lighting is therefore determined by the average efficacy of the installed lamps in the assessed asset and the standard asset and the expected reduction in energy use from installed lighting controls.

### Lighting efficacy

The lighting efficacy improvement factor is calculated based on a floor area weighted average value for the efficacy of the installed lamp types, which takes into account whether the lamps are fitted with diffusers or shades and, for LED and fluorescent lamps, whether they are fitted with constant illuminance controls.

$$\text{Floor area weighted lamp efficacy} = \text{Efficacy}_{\text{lamp}_1} \times \text{Floor area}_{\text{lamp}_1}/\text{Floor area}_{\text{total}} + \text{Efficacy}_{\text{lamp}_2} \times \text{Floor area}_{\text{lamp}_2}/\text{Floor area}_{\text{total}} + \dots + \text{Efficacy}_{\text{lamp}_n} \times \text{Floor area}_{\text{lamp}_n}/\text{Floor area}_{\text{total}}$$

### Lighting system efficiency

The efficiency of the lighting system includes the lighting efficacy and the expected reduction in energy use from installed lighting controls. The asset calculator considers four types of lighting controls; dimmable photoelectric controls, photoelectric switching controls, auto off presence detection and auto on presence detection and a typical % saving is associated with each type of control. The average lighting control saving is calculated as a floor area weighted average value.

$$\text{Floor area weighted lighting control savings} = \text{Saving}_{\text{control}_1} \times \text{Floor area}_{\text{control}_1}/\text{Floor area}_{\text{total}} + \text{Saving}_{\text{control}_2} \times \text{Floor area}_{\text{control}_2}/\text{Floor area}_{\text{total}} + \dots + \text{Saving}_{\text{control}_n} \times \text{Floor area}_{\text{control}_n}/\text{Floor area}_{\text{total}}$$

$$\text{Lighting efficiency improvement factor} = 1 - ((\text{Floor area weighted lamp efficacy}_{\text{asset}} \times (1 + \text{Floor area weighted lighting control savings}_{\text{asset}})) / (\text{Floor area weighted lamp efficacy}_{\text{std}} \times (1 + \text{Floor area weighted lighting control savings}_{\text{std}})))$$

## Hot water

The demand for hot water is implicitly included in the BREEAM In-Use energy benchmark so the improvement factor for hot water only needs to consider the hot water generator efficiency and distribution losses.

### Hot water generator efficiency

The efficiency of the hot water generator affects the amount of energy needed to meet the hot water demand, where a hot water generator with a higher efficiency will result in a lower energy consumption. The hot water generator efficiency improvement factor is therefore determined by:

$$\text{Hot water generator improvement factor} = (1/\text{efficiency}_{\text{asset}})/(1/\text{efficiency}_{\text{std}})$$

### Hot water system efficiency

The efficiency of the hot water system includes the hot water generator efficiency and any distribution losses. The asset calculator assumes that there will be no heat losses associated with local generation systems, and applies a 10% heat loss for centralised systems and a 20% heat loss for district heating systems.

$$\text{Hot water system efficiency improvement factor} = \text{Hot water generation improvement factor} \times (1 + \text{losses}_{\text{asset}})/(1 + \text{losses}_{\text{std}})$$

### Energy and carbon emissions from hot water

Energy consumption for hot water is then calculated based on the hot water improvement factor as follows:

$$\text{Asset hot water energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year)} = \text{overall hot water improvement factor} \times \text{benchmark hot water energy use (kWh/m}^2 \text{ per year)}$$

*Asset hot water carbon emissions (kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq/m<sup>2</sup> per year) = Asset hot water energy use \* fuel CO<sub>2</sub> emission factor*

### Carbon emissions from on-site renewable electricity generation.

The energy performance calculation takes account of the carbon benefits associated with renewable electricity generated on-site by assigning a zero-emission factor on-site renewable electricity generation.

### Overall asset energy performance and credits

The overall asset energy performance score is then calculated by summing the calculated carbon savings for all end uses and comparing this to benchmark carbon emissions.

### Improvement potential

In addition to calculating the energy performance, the asset calculator also generates outputs which indicate areas where scope for improving energy performance may exist. An example of the output generated is provided below in Figure 5.

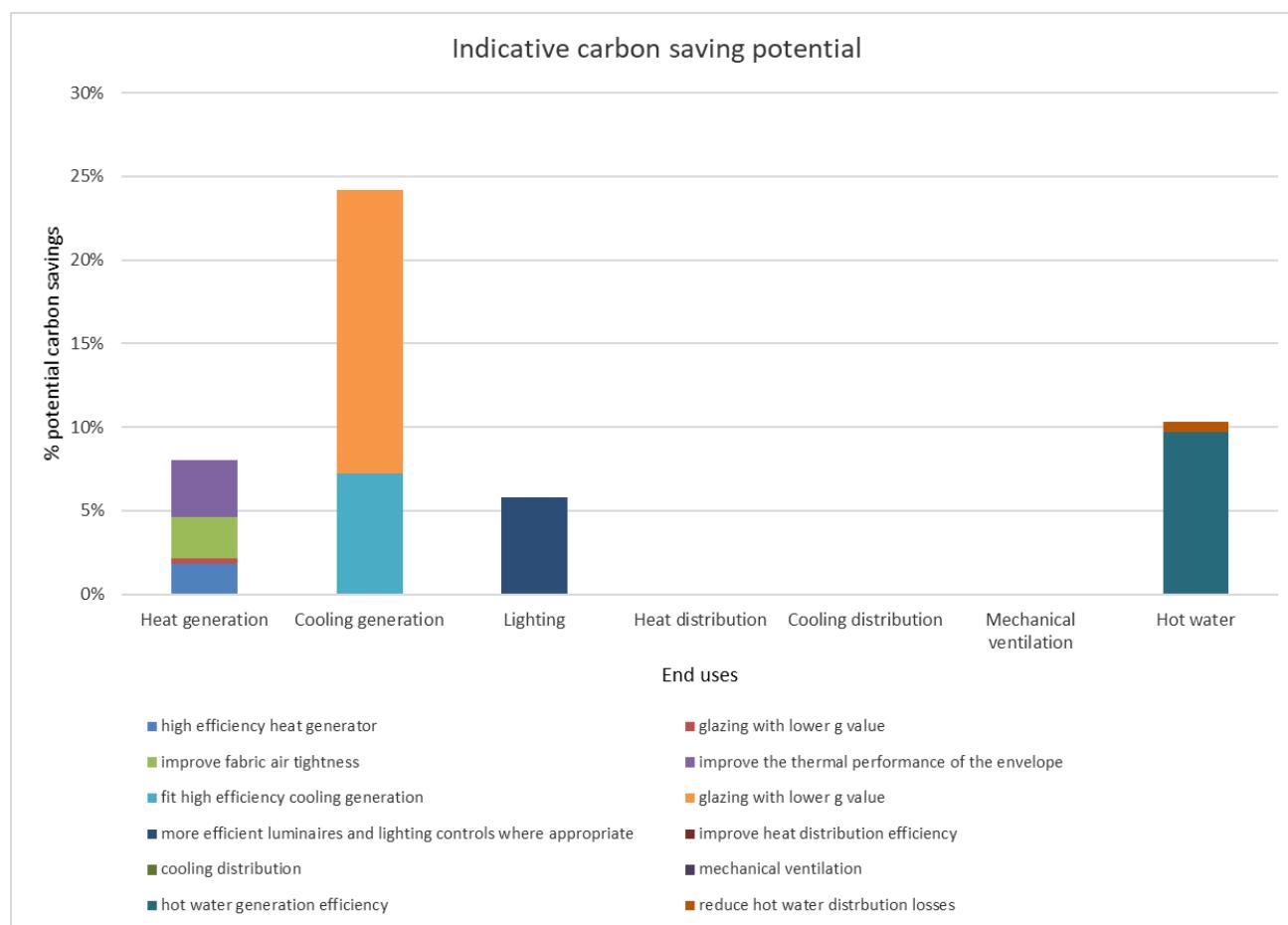


Figure 5: Example of output - Indicative carbon saving potential

Because of the simplified modelling approach adopted, the actual savings potential is likely to vary and may not be technically or economically feasible. Where the asset rating is based on default rather than actual values the carbon saving potential will be even less accurate. Therefore, this information should be used to identify areas that warrant more detailed investigation and not be used directly to inform investment decisions.

The calculation methodology for the carbon savings potential is the same as that described for the energy performance calculation but, rather than calculating how the assessed asset compares to a standard version of the asset, the assessed asset is compared to the best practice version of the asset.



## Asset Performance: Ene 01 Building services



Contributes to 40 credits available for asset energy rating

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by increasing the intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and of installed buildings services

### Question

What building services are present?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
-	A.	Question not answered
-	B.	Heating only
-	C.	Heating and cooling
-	D.	Cooling only
-	E.	None (lighting only)
-	F.	Hot water only
-	G.	Heating and hot water
-	H.	Heating and cooling and hot water
-	I.	Cooling and hot water

### Methodology

#### Heating/cooling systems

Heating/cooling systems can be excluded from the calculation where the heated or cooled area equates to less than 10% of overall floor area.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	<p>One of the following is acceptable:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of listed system(s).</li><li>2. Extract of Operational &amp; Maintenance (O&amp;M) manuals listing all building services that are present in the building</li><li>3. Installation diagrams.</li></ol>

## Additional information

### Other information

This question must be answered in order to generate the asset energy rating.



## Asset Performance: Ene 02 Percentage of mechanical ventilation



Contributes to 40 credits available for asset energy rating

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by increasing the intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and of installed buildings services

### Question

What percentage of the floor area is mechanically ventilated?

Credits	Percentage of floor area that is mechanically ventilated
-	%

### Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	<p>The following can be used to demonstrate compliance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of the ventilation system</li> </ul> <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Building plans showing the floor area that is mechanically ventilated and how the percentage of the floor area was calculated</li> </ul>

### Definitions

#### Mechanically ventilated area:

For the purposes of this BREEAM In-Use issue, a mechanically ventilated area is an area with centralised mechanical ventilation system.

Typically, a mechanically ventilated area will provide both supply and extract. Areas that are fitted with local mechanical extraction should not be included.

## Additional information

### Asset energy calculator:

In order to obtain the maximum possible number of credits for the asset energy performance as much information as possible should be entered. Where no value is entered, the asset energy rating calculator will assume a pessimistic default value.



## Asset Performance: Ene 03 Fabric performance



Contributes to 40 credits  
available for asset energy  
rating

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability: All projects**

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by increasing the intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and of installed buildings services

### Question

Fabric performance questions:

Credits	Question	Enter value or select a single answer option	Units
-	Average U-value of the external walls	-	W/m <sup>2</sup> K
-	Average U-value of the roof	-	W/m <sup>2</sup> K
-	Average U-value of the windows	-	W/m <sup>2</sup> K
-	External wall area (excluding windows)	-	m <sup>2</sup>
-	Roof area	-	m <sup>2</sup>
-	Window area	-	m <sup>2</sup>
-	Volume of building	-	m <sup>3</sup>
-	Average g-value of the glazing	-	
-	Is external solar shading to reduce excess solar gains during the cooling season fitted?	Yes/ No	
-	In what year were the windows last replaced?	-	
-	Does the asset use any renewable electricity generated on-site	Yes/ No	
-	What percent of annual electricity use is from renewable electricity generated on-site	-	

## Methodology

### Asset Energy Calculator Guidance

See Asset Energy Calculator Guidance for the heat loss through fabric and the internal heat gains.

### Average U-value and g value calculation

An area weighted average across all different constructions for the relevant element.

### External solar shading

Solar shading should be provided where solar heat gains will be significant during the cooling season. The significance of the solar heat gains is determined by the amount of sunlight entering the room. The Assessor should consider the following characteristics;

- Orientation of the windows to direct sunlight in the cooling season
- Overall size of the windows
- Relative size of the windows compared to the space.

For example, in the northern hemisphere high levels of south facing glazing could result in significant solar heat gains in the summer.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	<p>Evidence demonstrating the U or g values may include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Energy Performance Certificate</li> <li>• Photographic evidence of building wall construction</li> <li>• Building design plans</li> <li>• Written details of the National building regulations stating the minimum U-value at the time the asset was constructed</li> <li>• Expert report by a building surveyor or equivalent estimating the U-value</li> <li>• Manufacturer's literature specifying the U-values.</li> </ul>
All	Plans and Façade drawings to demonstrate calculation of volume of building
All	External Solar shading can be demonstrated via Photographic evidence or the Assessor's Site Inspection report.
All	Evidence must be provided to support the calculation of percent of annual electricity use from renewable electricity generated on-site that has been entered. This can be metering data for renewable electricity generated on-site, and metering or billing data for grid supply electricity consumption.

## Definitions

### **U-value:**

A measure of heat loss in a building element such as a wall, floor or roof that measures the effectiveness of a material as an insulator. A lower U-value indicates a higher level of thermal efficiency.

### **g-value:**

A measure of the proportion of heat that is transmitted through a window where a g-value of 1 indicates that 100% heat transmission.

## Additional information

### **Asset energy calculator**

In order to obtain the maximum possible number of credits for the asset energy performance as much information as possible should be entered. Where no value is entered, the asset energy rating calculator will assume a pessimistic default value.



## Asset Performance: Ene 04 Air permeability of the fabric



Contributes to 40 credits  
available for asset energy  
rating

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by increasing the intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and of installed buildings services

### Question

Enter the result of the building pressure/air leakage test if known (m<sup>3</sup>/h.m<sup>2</sup>@50Pa)

Credits	Enter pressure/ air leakage test result
-	m <sup>3</sup> /h.m <sup>2</sup> @50Pa

If a pressure/air leakage test has not been conducted; has a thermographic survey been undertaken?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
-	A.	Yes
-	B.	No

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria
1.	Testing must be conducted by a relevant competent person.

### Methodology

#### Air leakage testing standard

The appropriate standard for air leakage testing is: ISO 9972:2015 Thermal performance of buildings - Determination of air permeability of buildings - Fan pressurization method

#### Air leakage testing

Air leakage testing results must be from testing that has, at least, been carried out after construction of the building or when structural changes have been made to the building.

#### Thermographic survey standard

The appropriate standard for a Thermographic survey is ISO 6781:1983 Thermal insulation -- Qualitative detection of thermal irregularities in building envelopes -- Infrared method

### **Thermographic survey**

The thermographic survey should cover 100% of the treated spaces, unless it is a large complex building and ensure that all elements of the building fabric that enclose an internal heated or conditioned (treated) zone of the building will be tested. This includes internal walls separating treated and untreated zones.

In the case of large and complex buildings, e.g. airports, large hospitals and high-rise buildings, it may be impractical for the thermographic survey and air tightness testing to cover 100% of the building. Where a complete thermographic survey is deemed impractical by a Class/Category II thermographic surveyor, the guidance in air tightness standard ISO 9972:2015 should be followed regarding the extent of the survey and testing.

### **Evidence**

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Copy of results from building pressure and/or air leakage test.
All	Copy of thermographic survey results.
All	Confirmation of competence levels for persons performing testing.

### **Definitions**

#### **Air leakage test:**

A test which quantifies the air permeability rate of the building envelope. The more airtight the building fabric is the lower the air permeability result will be. To maximise energy efficiency, it is advised that the air permeability result is as low as reasonably practicable.

#### **Relevant competent person:**

For air leakage testing:

An individual achieving all of the following can be considered to be a relevant competent person:

- a) Holds a recognised qualification in airtightness testing and measurement.
- b) Has relevant experience in air pressure testing and has carried out testing on at least ten large non-residential buildings within the last five years. They should also have a recognised qualification in airtightness testing and measurement.

Their expertise should be broad enough to cover all required technical aspects guaranteeing that the data collected during the test is appropriate and the results reflect the assessed airtightness performance of the building. It can be someone operating as sole trader or employed by public or private enterprise bodies.

#### **For thermographic surveys:**

Professionals holding a valid Category II certificate in thermography, as defined by ISO 18436-7:2014 or Class II certificate in infrared thermography as defined by ISO 6781-3:2015.

## Additional information

### Asset energy calculator

In order to obtain the maximum possible number of credits for the asset energy performance as much information as possible should be entered. Where no value is entered, the asset energy rating calculator will assume a pessimistic default value.



## Asset Performance: Ene 05 Cooling



**Contributes to 40 credits  
available for asset energy  
rating**

**No Minimum Standard**

**Applicability: All projects**

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by increasing the intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and of installed buildings services

### Question

1. Is space cooling generated on-site?
2. What is the main system type for on-site cooling?
3. Please enter Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER) of the main on-site cooling generator, if known
4. Is the on-site cooling system central or local?
5. Is the on-site cooling system central or local?
6. In what year was the main chiller/cooling system replaced (if known)?
7. For district cooling only:
  - a. Do you know what types of cooling generation are used for network cooling supply?
  - b. What are the main cooling generation sources?
  - c. What is the percentage distribution losses for the cooling network (if known)?

Credits	Question	For questions 1, 2, 4, 5, 7a-b select a single answer option. For questions 3, 6, 7c enter value
-	1	Yes / No
-	2	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Question not answered</li> <li>b. Asset is not cooled</li> <li>c. Localised (room) air conditioning unit</li> <li>d. Chiller</li> <li>e. On-site cogeneration</li> <li>f. Renewable cooling source</li> <li>g. Other (user defined)</li> </ol>

Credits	Question	<b>For questions 1, 2, 4, 5, 7a-b select a single answer option. For questions 3, 6, 7c enter value</b>
-	3	Enter EER of the cooling generator
-	4	Central / Local
-	5	Yes / No
-	6	Enter year
-	7.a	Yes / No Note: This should be entered under Ene 9a in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform
-	7.b	Cooling source 1 Cooling source 2 Cooling source 3 Cooling source n Note: This should be entered under Ene 9a in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform
-	7.c	Enter % Note: This should be entered under Ene 9a in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform

## Methodology

### Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER): CCHP/absorption chillers

To assess CCHP/absorption chillers using BREEAM In-Use, select the 'main system type for cooling' as 'Chiller'. The energy efficiency ratio (EER) for the cooling generator should then be calculated as follows:

$$\text{EER} = \text{rated absorption chiller COP} \times 2$$

As an example, if the absorption chiller COP was 0.7, then the calculated energy efficiency ratio to be entered into the tool would be:

$$0.7 \times 2 = 1.4$$

Where the calculated EER is below the minimum value that can be entered into the tool, please enter the minimum value. This correction is made to cancel out the primary energy factor normally applied for electrical chillers that would not be applicable in this instance. The COP value can be interchanged with the EER value.

### Main cooling system type

Where there is more than one cooling system type in the asset, the Assessor must verify that the selected generation type is the main cooling source for the asset. This should be based upon respective system cooling output capacities.

### Multiple cooling generation units for the main cooling system

If there is more than one cooling generation unit, the Assessor should calculate the average energy efficiency of the units based on their respective cooling generation capacities.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1, 3, 4, 5	Photographic evidence of relevant systems.
All	Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
6	Copy of documentation outlining when the cooling system was installed or replaced, such as, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Extract of O&amp;M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for cooling generator/cooling system</li> <li>b) Service records</li> <li>c) Installation records</li> <li>d) Maintenance records</li> </ul>
7	Copy documentation provided by district cooling operator.

## Additional information

### Asset energy calculator

In order to obtain the maximum possible number of credits for the asset energy performance as much information as possible should be entered. Where no value is entered, the asset energy rating calculator will assume a pessimistic default value.



## Asset Performance: Ene 06 Heating



Contributes to 40 credits  
available for asset energy  
rating

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by increasing the intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and of installed buildings services.

### Question

1. Is space heating generated on-site?
2. What is the main generation type for on-site space heating?
3. Please enter the efficiency or COP of the main on-site heat generator.
4. What is the main fuel used for on-site heat generation?
5. Is the on-site main space heating system centralised or local?
6. Is heat distributed around the building via air?
7. In what year was the main heat generator/heating system last replaced (if known)?
8. For district heating only:
  - a. Do you know what types heat generation are used for network heat supply?
  - b. What are the main heat generation sources?
  - c. What is the percentage distribution losses for the heat network (if known)?

Credits	Question	For questions 1 - 6, 8 a - b select a single answer. For questions 7 and 8c enter value
-	1.	Yes / No
-	2.	Question not answered Boiler Heat pump/reversible chiller Direct electricity consumption Other on-site heat generation e.g., CHP/Solar thermal Other (user entry)

Credits	Question	<b>For questions 1 - 6, 8 a - b select a single answer. For questions 7 and 8c enter value</b>	
-	3.	Enter efficiency	
-	4.	Question not answered	Other petroleum gas
		Electricity	Coal
		Natural gas	Biodiesel
		Burning oil/ Kerosene	Landfill gas
		Gas oil	Other biogas
		Fuel oil	Wood
		Diesel	Renewable heat source
		Petrol	Renewable cooling
		LPG	
-	5.	Centralised / Local	
-	6.	Yes / No	
-	7.	Enter year	
-	8.a	Yes / No	
		Note: This should be entered under Ene 9b in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform	
-	8.b	Heat source 1	
		Heat source 2	
		Heat source 3	
		Heat source n	
		Note: This should be entered under Ene 9b in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform	
-	8.c	Enter %	
		Note: This should be entered under Ene 9b in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform	

## Methodology

### Main generation type for space heating

Where there is more than one heat generation type in the asset, the Assessor must verify that the selected generation type is the main heat source for the asset.

This should be based upon respective system heat output capacities.

### Multiple heat generation units for the main heating system type

If there is more than one heat generation unit the Assessor should calculate the average energy efficiency, or COP for heat pumps of the units based on their respective heat generation capacities.

### COP of heat pumps

The coefficient of performance (COP) of a heat pump is calculated as the ratio of heating or cooling provided to electrical energy consumed. COP entered must not be higher than 7.

### Efficiency of CHP unit

The efficiency of a CHP unit should be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Overall efficiency} = \text{thermal efficiency} + (2 \times \text{electrical efficiency})$$

As an example, if the thermal efficiency was 50% and the electrical efficiency 35% the calculated efficiency would be:

$$50\% + (2 \times 35\%) = 120\%$$

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of listed space heating system, indicating distribution method.
All	Extract of O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information of heating systems that are present in the asset.
All	Where there is more than one heat source installed, photographic evidence that the selected generation type is the main heat source.
All	Evidence demonstrating the main heating system is local / centralised.
All	Installation diagrams of space heating system.
6	Copy of documentation outlining when the heating system was installed or replaced, such as: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Extract of O&amp;M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for heating generator/heating system</li> <li>Service records</li> <li>Installation records</li> <li>Maintenance records</li> </ol>
All	Evidence demonstrating when the main heat generator/heating system last replaced.
8	Copy documentation provided by district cooling operator.

## Definitions

### COP:

The coefficient of performance (COP) of a heat pump is the ratio of heating or cooling provided to electrical energy consumed.

## Additional information

### Asset energy calculator

In order to obtain the maximum possible number of credits for the asset energy performance as much information as possible should be entered. Where no value is entered, the asset energy rating calculator will assume a pessimistic default value.



## Asset Performance: Ene 07 Internal lighting



Contributes to 40 credits  
available for asset energy  
rating

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by increasing the intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and of installed buildings services.

### Question

1. What percentage of lit asset floor area is fitted with LED lamps?
  - a. What percentage of LED lighting is fitted with constant illuminance controls?
2. What percentage of lit asset floor area is fitted with Compact Fluorescent lamps?
  - a. What percentage of Compact Fluorescent lamps have diffusers or shades fitted?
3. What percentage of lit asset floor area is fitted with Tungsten Halogen lamps?
  - a. What percentage of Tungsten Halogen lamps have diffusers or shades fitted?
4. What percentage of lit asset floor area is fitted with Incandescent lamps?
  - a. What percentage of Incandescent lamps have diffusers or shades fitted?
5. What percentage of lit asset floor area is fitted with T12 fluorescent tubes?
  - a. What percentage of T12 fluorescent tubes have diffusers or shades fitted?
6. What percentage of lit asset floor area is fitted with T8 fluorescent tubes?
  - a. What percentage of T8 fluorescent tubes have diffusers or shades fitted?
7. What percentage of lit asset floor area is fitted with T5 fluorescent tubes?
  - a. What percentage of T5 fluorescent tubes have diffusers or shades fitted?
8. What percentage fluorescent tubes are fitted with constant illuminance controls?
9. What percentage of fluorescent tubes are fitted with high frequency ballasts?
10. What percentage of lit asset floor area is fitted with metal halide lamps?
  - a. What percentage of metal halide lamps have diffusers or shades fitted?
11. What percentage of lit asset floor area has access to daylight?
  - a. What percentage of day lit space is fitted with dimmable photoelectric control?
  - b. What percentage of day lit space is fitted with photoelectric switching controls?

12. What percentage of the lit asset floor area is occasionally occupied?

- a. What percentage of occasionally occupied space is fitted with auto off (manual on) presence detection?
- b. What percentage of occasionally occupied space is fitted with auto on and off presence detection?

Credits	Question No.	Question	Answer	a.	b.
				Answer	Answer
-	1.	LED lighting	%	%	n/a
-	2.	Compact Fluorescent lamps	%	%	n/a
-	3.	Tungsten Halogen lamps	%	%	n/a
-	4.	Incandescent lamps	%	%	n/a
-	5.	T12 fluorescent tubes	%	%	n/a
-	6.	T8 fluorescent tubes	%	%	n/a
-	7.	T5 fluorescent tubes	%	%	n/a
-	8.	Fluorescent tubes with constant illuminance controls	%	n/a	n/a
-	9.	Fluorescent tubes with high frequency ballasts	%	n/a	n/a
-	10.	Metal halide lamps	%	%	n/a
-	11.	What is the percentage of the lit asset floor area with access to daylight?	%	%	%
-	12.	What percentage of the lit asset floor area is occasionally occupied?	%	%	%

## Methodology

### Valid responses for each lamp type question

Valid responses for each lamp type questions are in percentage (%) values and must equal 100%.

### Floor area calculations

The total floor area for all the fitted lamp types must equal 100%. Questions 1 - 7 and 10.

The total floor area of daylight space fitted controls must not exceed 100% of daylight space. Questions 11a and 11b.

The total floor area of occasionally occupied space must not exceed 100% of occasionally occupied space. Question 12a and 12b.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of visual inspection of lighting types identified.
All	Copy of building plans highlighting areas which use the mentioned lighting types, daylight and occupancy sensors for lighting.
All	Robust evidence to demonstrate how the percentage was calculated.

## Definitions

### Diffuser or shade:

A diffuser or a shade is transparent or translucent optical element that scatters in all directions the light emitted by the light source(s) contained with a luminaire.

### For dimmable lighting with constant illuminance control:

By implication constant illuminance control is intended to mean a lighting control scheme that provides constant illuminance on the task by dimming the light sources early in their life cycle when they have a higher output. The savings achievable through constant illuminance control are more significant for LED or fluorescent lighting compared to other lamp types because the percentage light output drops more significantly over the lifetime of the light source. Examples of constant illuminance controls include, but are not limited to, dimming ballasts or integral LED drivers used in conjunction with photodetectors to meet task illuminance requirements by controlling the light output of the lighting system.

### Occasionally occupied space:

Examples of occasionally occupied space includes toilets, kitchenette for an office, and storage areas. Occupied spaces can vary depending on the asset type.

## Additional information

### Asset energy calculator

In order to obtain the maximum possible number of credits for the asset energy performance as much information as possible should be entered. Where no value is entered, the asset energy rating calculator will assume a pessimistic default value.



## Asset Performance: Ene 08 Ventilation



Contributes to 40 credits  
available for asset energy  
rating

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by increasing the intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and of installed buildings services

### Question

1. What percentage of fans are fitted with variable speed drives (VSD)?
2. Are the pumps fitted with VSDs?
3. What is the specific fan power for air handling systems?
4. Has the ductwork been tested for leakage and appropriate remedial action taken?
5. In what year was the main ventilation system replaced (if known)?
6. What is the heat recovery rate of the ventilation system (if known)?

Credits	Question	For questions 1,3,5,6 enter value. For question 2 and 4 select either Yes or No	Units
-	1.	Enter value	%
-	2.	Yes / No	
-	3.	Enter value	W/l/s
-	4.	Yes / No	
-	5.	Enter year	
-	6.	Enter year	%

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for the ventilation system.
All	Service/maintenance records for the ventilation system.
All	Visual inspection of equipment date (photographic evidence if possible).
All	Copy of duct and air handling leakage test results.
5	<p>Copy of documentation outlining when the heating system was installed or replaced, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Extract of O&amp;M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for heating generator/heating system</li> <li>b) Service records</li> <li>c) Installation records</li> <li>d) Maintenance records</li> </ul>

## Definitions

### Air handling systems:

For the purposes of this issue, air handling systems are systems (usually centralised) which distribute air (usually for cooling) around the building.

### Variable speed drive:

These are devices that can be attached to electrical motors to adjust the speed of a motor e.g., in a fan or a pump, when the service demand varies. These are also referred to as VFD (Variable frequency drive) and AFD (adjustable frequency drive).

## Additional information

### Asset energy calculator

In order to obtain the maximum possible number of credits for the asset energy performance as much information as possible should be entered. Where no value is entered, the asset energy rating calculator will assume a pessimistic default value.



## Asset Performance: Ene 09 Water heating



Contributes to 40 credits  
available for asset energy  
rating

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To recognise the contribution that hot water systems make to the overall energy performance of the asset.

### Question

1. Is hot water generated on-site?
2. Is the main on-site hot water system local or centralised?
3. What is the main generation type for on-site hot water?
4. What energy source is used to generate on-site hot water?
5. Please enter the hot water generation efficiency or COP, (if known)
6. In what year was the main hot water generator/hot water system last replaced (if known)?
7. For hot water provided by district heating only;
  - a. Do you know what types heat generation are used for network heat supply?
  - b. What are the main heat generation sources?
  - c. What is the percentage distribution losses for the heat network (if known)?

Credits	Question	For questions 1 - 4, 7a - b select a single answer option. For question 5,6 and 7c enter value
-	1.	Yes / No
-	2.	Centralised / local
-	3.	Boiler Heat pump/ reversible chiller Direct electricity Other on-site e.g. CHP /solar thermal Other (user entry)

Credits	Question	<b>For questions 1 - 4, 7a - b select a single answer option. For question 5,6 and 7c enter value</b>	
-	4.	Question not answered Electricity Natural gas Burning oil/ Kerosene Gas oil Fuel oil Diesel Petrol LPG	Other petroleum gas Coal Biodiesel Landfill gas Other biogas Wood Renewable heat source Renewable cooling
-	5.	Enter value	
-	6.	Enter year	
-	7.a	Yes / No Note: This should be entered under Ene 9b in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform	
-	7.b	Heat source 1 Heat source 2 Heat source 3 Heat source n Note: This should be entered under Ene 9b in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform	
-	7.c	Enter % Note: This should be entered under Ene 9b in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform	

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of water heating systems.
All	Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information (confirming generation efficiency or COP).
All	Installation diagrams.
All	Copy of documentation outlining when the hot water system was installed or replaced, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Extract of O&amp;M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for heat generator/heating system</li> <li>b) Service records</li> <li>c) Installation records</li> <li>d) Maintenance records</li> </ul>
7	Copy documentation provided by district cooling operator.

## Additional information

### Asset energy calculator

In order to obtain the maximum possible number of credits for the asset energy performance as much information as possible should be entered. Where no value is entered, the asset energy rating calculator will assume a pessimistic default value.

## Asset Performance:



### Ene 10 Demand side management (DSM) capabilities for electricity



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Apartment buildings only

#### Aim

To reduce carbon emissions associated with grid supply electricity by enabling electricity demand profiles to better match the availability of renewable electricity generation sources.

#### Question

1. Does the asset have any electric storage capacity?
2. Is cogeneration optimised to coordinate with local renewable energy generation and local energy demand profiles?
3. Are electric smart appliances or electric domestic hot water (DHW) subject to DSM control?
4. Is electric heating subject to DSM control?
5. Is electric cooling subject to DSM control?
6. Does the electric vehicle charging, or other charging loads, include any grid balancing?
7. Does the HVAC system have run time management?

Credits	Question	Select a single answer option	Points awarded	Points available
*	1	Yes	1	1
		No	0	1
*	2	No cogeneration	Filtered	0
		Yes	1	1
		No	0	1
*	3	Yes	1	1
		No	0	1
*	4	No electric heating	Filtered	0
		Yes	1	1
		No	0	1

Credits	Question	Select a single answer option	Points awarded	Points available
*	5	No electric cooling	Filtered	0
		Yes	1	1
		No	0	1
*	6	No electric vehicle or other charging loads	Filtered	0
		No	0	2
		On-way grid balancing controlled charging	1	2
		Two-way grid balancing controlled charging and electric vehicle to grid	2	2
*	7	No HVAC system	Filtered	0
		Yes	1	1
		No	0	1

\* Refer to Methodology

## Methodology

### Credit allocation

Credits are based on the percentage of points achieved against number of points available as follows;

Table 18: Allocation of credits

Percentage of available points achieved	Credits
≥ 25%	1
≥ 50%	2
≥ 75%	3
100%	4

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Extract of relevant O&M manuals OR copy of manufacturer information with link to the project assessed.
All	Visual inspection and verification.

## Definitions

### Charging loads:

Building related charging loads, such as charging rooms, represent a significant way of making electricity demand and grid supply match.

### Demand side management (DSM):

Demand-side management refers to adopting measures to improve consumption efficiency on the demand side by responding to electricity generation. Changing consumption patterns reduces overall electricity consumption and therefore demand but meets the same consumption function. This could include but not limited to;

- A reduction in electrical consumption of traditional appliances
- Increase in time-of-use appliances and electronic devices
- Plug-in electric vehicles grid balancing
- Local renewable electricity generation
- Control devices and platforms
- Electricity storage technologies

### Grid balancing:

Using this capability to ensure that electricity input to the grid match the electricity demand. This results in a reduction in carbon emissions compared to conventional grid balancing which involves ramping up existing fossil fuelled power plants.

### Run time management:

This is a type of control that limits the hours that a piece of equipment is able to run. This would involve individual setting following a predefined time schedule including fixed preconditioning phases.



## Asset Performance: Ene 11 Installed controls



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To reduce operational energy consumption and associated carbon emissions by installing appropriate controls to reduce unnecessary energy consumption (waste).

### Question

1. Are there internal temperature controllers in individual rooms or zones?
2. Can the output from the heat generator and cooling generator be modulated?
3. Does the system have an interlock control?
4. Can the air flow be controlled at room level?
5. Is the supply air temperature controlled?
6. Is the air humidity controlled?

Credits	Question	Select a single answer option	Points awarded	Points available
*	1	Asset does not have both heating and cooling	Filtered	0
		Yes, with communication between controllers	3	3
		Yes, by thermostatic values or an electronic controller	2	3
		No	0	3
*	2	Asset does not have both heating and cooling	Filtered	0
		Indoor temperature control	3	3
		Outside temperature compensation control	2	3
		No control	0	3

Credits	Question	Select a single answer option	Points awarded	Points available
*	3	Asset does not have both heating and cooling	Filtered	0
		Total interlock	3	3
		Partial interlock	2	3
		No interlock	0	3
*	4	No mechanical ventilation or heating or cooling distributed by air	Filtered	0
		Demand or presence dependent air flow control at room level	3	3
		Time dependent air flow control at room level	2	3
		No air flow control at room level	0	3
*	5	No heating or cooling distributed by air	Filtered	0
		Variable set point with load compensation of supply air temperature	3	3
		Variable set point with outdoor temperature compensation of supply air temperature	2	3
		Constant set point for supply air temperature	1	3
		No control of air supply temperature	0	3
*	6	No humidification provided in the asset	Filtered	0
		Room or exhaust or supply air humidity control	3	3
		Supply air humidity limitation	2	3
		No air humidity control	0	3

\*Refer to Methodology

## Methodology

### Credit allocation

Credits are based on the percentage of points achieved against number of points available as follows;

Table 19: Allocation of credits

Percentage of available points achieved	Credits
≥ 20%	1
≥ 40%	2
≥ 60%	3
≥ 80%	4

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of controls.
All	All remote control must be via an accessible device.
All	Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.

## Definitions

### Appropriate controls:

These include separate or integrated controls associated with individual building servicing systems and appliances as well as building management system (BMS) and remote-control devices e.g., via a smartphone app.

### Interlock control:

This control prevents the heating system operating when the cooling system is operating and vice versa.

### Accessible device:

Devices are accessible if they link with a web or mobile interface that meet the WCAG2.0 (ISO/IEC 40500) accessibility standards ([www.w3.org](http://www.w3.org); [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org)).

Where the above is not met, (e.g. only a visual display unit is installed), a device must have been installed that meets an equivalent level of accessibility to ensure it is usable by people with disabilities.



## Asset Performance: Ene 12 Local energy performance asset rating



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All buildings

### Aim

To recognise operational energy efficiency and carbon benefits associated with benchmarking against a local energy standard.

### Question

1. Has the asset been assessed against local energy performance standards for existing buildings?
2. Was the assessment of the asset a legal or regulatory requirement or undertaken voluntarily?
3. Has the assessment been verified against a recognised industry standard by a third party
4. What energy uses does the rating take account of?
5. Is the rating based on calculated or measured energy consumption?
6. What metric is used to determine energy performance?
7. Enter the energy performance value metric for the asset, if available.
8. Enter the benchmark energy performance value for the asset type, if available.

Credits	Question	For questions 1 - 3, 5 - 6 select a single answer option. For question 4 select all that apply. For question 7 - 8 enter value
1	1.	Yes/No
-	2.	Legal or regulatory/Voluntary
1	3.	Yes/No
-	4.	Heating Cooling Hot water Mechanical ventilation Lighting Transport systems Building control systems Communication systems

Credits	Question	<b>For questions 1 - 3, 5 - 6 select a single answer option. For question 4 select all that apply. For question 7 - 8 enter value</b>
		Specialist energy uses e.g., swimming pools, server rooms Other energy uses
-	5.	Calculated / Measured
-	6.	kgCO <sub>2</sub> /m <sup>2</sup> kWh delivered energy/m <sup>2</sup> for each fuel kWh heating and cooling demand per m <sup>2</sup> kWh primary energy per m <sup>2</sup> Dimensionless metric Other (please state)
-	7.	Enter value here
1	8.	Enter value here

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria
1.	For assessments inside the European Union (EU), local energy performance standards must be derived from national policy framework which exists to facilitate the EU 'Energy Performance of Buildings Directive (EPBD)'.
2.	For assessments outside of the EU, energy performance standards must be derived from relevant national policy framework.
3.	Benchmarks must correspond to the typical or average energy performance value for the asset type. If the benchmark is given as an interval, the midpoint should be used.

## Methodology

### Asset energy performance

The third credit for the Asset energy performance will only be awarded if the asset energy performance is lower than the benchmark energy performance for the asset type.

### Recognised industry standards

Examples of recognised industry standards include;

- <https://ec.europa.eu/energy/en/eu-buildings-factsheets-topics-tree/voluntary-energy-performance-certification-schemes>
- <https://www.iea.org/beep/>

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Certificate or rating output document
All	Scheme name and version and scheme documentation



## Asset Performance: Ene 13 Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All buildings

### Aim

To minimise carbon emissions through on-site renewable energy generation from PV.

### Question

1. Is there any accessible roof area where PV panels could be installed?
2. What is the total accessible roof area ( $m^2$ ) where PV panels could be installed?
3. What is the total area of PV panels installed on the roofs?
4. Is there any significant over shading of PV panels on the roof?
5. Are there any accessible areas elsewhere on-site where PV panels could be installed?
6. What is the total area of accessible areas elsewhere on-site where PV panels could be installed?
7. What is the total area of PV panels installed elsewhere on-site?
8. Is there any significant over shading of PV panels elsewhere on-site?

Credits	Question	For questions 2,3,6 and 7 provide area in $m^2$ . For questions 1,4,5 and 8 select Yes or No
Max. 4	1.	Yes/No
Max. 4	2.	$m^2$
Max. 4	3.	$m^2$
Max. 4	4.	Yes/No
Max. 4	5.	Yes/No
Max. 4	6.	$m^2$
Max. 4	7.	$m^2$
Max 4	8.	Yes/No

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p><b>Filtering</b></p> <p>Where the asset does not have an accessible roof or suitable site areas, this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.</p>	All

## Methodology

Credits	Total PV panels installed (m <sup>2</sup> ) = (Q2+Q5)/total accessible area where PV panels could be installed (m <sup>2</sup> ) (Q1+Q4)	% of PV panels covered (significant over shading)
1	>10%	>30%
2	>30%	>70%
3	>50%	-
4	>70%	-

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
All	Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of the PV panels

## Definitions

### Asset plan area:

This is the area defined by the perimeter of the asset. This excludes car parking areas, landscaping, and other nonbuilding facilities.

### Accessible roof area:

This relates to the area of the roof where it would be feasible to install PV panels.

### Significant over shading:

Over shading is significant where 60% or more of the sky is blocked from the panel by obstacles.



## Asset Performance: Ene 14 Solar thermal panels



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise carbon emissions through on-site renewable energy generation from solar thermal.

### Question

Does the asset have any on-site solar thermal panels?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where the asset does not have an accessible roof, this issue can be filtered out of the assessment. Where the asset is supplied by district heating this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	All

### Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
All	Photographs of solar thermal panels.



## Asset Performance: Ene 15 Monitoring energy uses



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To reduce operational energy consumption through the effective management and monitoring of energy consumption for different building services and building services systems.

### Question

What percentage of end uses with significant energy consumption are sub-metered?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
-	B.	There are no end uses with significant energy use
4	C.	100% of end uses with significant energy consumption are sub-metered
3	D.	≥75% of end uses with significant energy consumption are sub-metered
2	E.	≥50% of end uses with significant energy consumption are sub-metered
1	F.	≥25% of end uses with significant energy consumption are sub-metered
0	G.	<25% of end uses with significant energy consumption are sub-metered

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there are not end uses with significant energy consumption in the asset the associated credits can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	Significant energy consumption is considered to be >8,500kWh per year for electricity and >67,000kWh per year for other energy sources	B - F
3.	Where there is more than one HVAC system type serving a particular end use the requirement applies to the main HVAC system.	B to F

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
4.	Where more than one end use is provided by the same HVAC component it is acceptable to submeter the combined energy consumption.	B to F

## Methodology

### Determining significant energy consumption

1. Identify which of the following end uses are present in the asset:
  - a. Space heating generation
  - b. Space cooling generation
  - c. Hot water generation
  - d. Mechanical ventilation
  - e. Fans for distributing space heating
  - f. Fans for distributing space cooling
  - g. Pumps for space heating
  - h. Pumps for cooling
  - i. Pumps for hot water
  - j. Commercial scale refrigeration
  - k. Internal lighting
  - l. Controls and telecommunications
  - m. IT equipment and small plug in loads
  - n. Internal transport (lifts and escalators)
  - o. External lighting
  - p. Other (user defined)
  
2. For each fuel type used in the asset estimate the energy consumption to determine whether it is significant;
  - a. End use energy consumption may be estimated based on installed capacity and anticipated full load run hours, based on measured energy consumption data for the assessed asset for a similar asset.
  - b. Where estimates of energy consumption are not available the BREEAM In-Use Online platform will provide an indication of end uses that are significant based on default values.
  - c. In instances where more than one end use is provided by a single building servicing system end use energy consumption may be estimated based on installed capacity and anticipated full load run hours, based on measured energy consumption data for the assessed asset or for a similar asset.
  - d. The BREEAM In-Use default end use energy consumption values are calculated based on the floor area of the asset and pessimistic energy consumption values which are higher than the typical values for the end use.

### Calculating energy use by subtraction

It is acceptable to calculate energy consumption for an end-use by subtracting sub-metered energy consumption for other end-uses from the relevant main utility meter reading.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Estimated energy consumption for building servicing systems indicating the end uses that they provide
All	Either copies of verified sub meter data for the first and last date of the 12 month period specified. These may be outputs from energy monitoring and management systems or automatic or manual meter readings  OR  Line diagram indicating sub-meters and the related energy uses or evidence to show that the end uses can be monitored separately

## Definitions

### **Small plug in loads:**

Plug-in equipment/appliances connected through power points.

### **Energy monitoring and management system:**

Examples include automatic meter reading systems and building energy management systems (BEMS). Automatic monitoring and targeting is an example of a management tool that includes automatic meter reading and data management.

### **Significant energy consumption:**

An end use or building servicing system is considered to be significant where the typical energy cost savings achieved through sub-metering is expected to payback within 10 years through energy cost savings achieved through improved energy management. For the purpose of this issue, energy use is where the estimated energy consumption exceeds the threshold kWh/year values of 8,500 kWh/year for electricity and 67,000 kWh/year for other fuels are deemed to be significant.

### **Sub-metering:**

Sub-meters are secondary to the main utility meters and are installed to measure consumption by specific items of plant or equipment, or to discrete physical areas, e.g. individual buildings, floors in a multi-storey building, tenanted areas, functional areas. Outputs include pulsed outputs or other open protocol communication outputs.



## Asset Performance: Ene 16 Monitoring of separate units



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Question 1 applies to all projects – Question 2 applies to apartments only

### Aim

To reduce operational energy consumption through the effective management and monitoring of energy consumption in separate units and common areas.

### Question

1. Are electricity and other fuels separately metered for each unit?

Credits	Answer	Select all that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes, all units have meters for electricity and other fuels.

2. Are electricity and other fuels separately metered for common areas?

Credits	Answer	Select all that apply
0	D.	Question not answered
0	E.	No
1	F.	Yes, common areas are separately metered.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Each unit and common areas should have a separate metered for electricity and the primary heating fuel. Where electricity is the primary heating fuel this will be sufficient.	C, D

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	<p>Either copies of verified meter data for the first and last date of the 12-month period specified. These may be outputs from energy monitoring and management systems or automatic or manual meter readings</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Line diagram indicating meters and the related spaces or evidence to show that the spaces can be monitored separately</p>



## Asset Performance:Ene 17 External lighting



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions from energy efficiency of external lighting.

### Question

What types of exterior lighting and car park lighting are installed?

Credits	Answer	If B is not selected, please select either answer C or D and either answer E or F.
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	All car park lighting and external lighting is not energy efficient and is not fitted with automatic energy savings controls
1	C.	External lighting is present and energy efficient OR is fitted with automatic energy saving controls
2	D.	External lighting is present and energy efficient AND is fitted with automatic energy saving controls
1	E.	Car park lighting is present and energy efficient OR is fitted with automatic energy saving controls
2	F.	Car park lighting is present and energy efficient AND is fitted with automatic energy saving controls

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where external lighting or car park lighting are not necessary from a safety perspective, the associated credits can be filtered out of the assessment.	All

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	This issue only applies to car parking areas associated with the asset being assessed	B, E, F
3.	<p>External lighting and car park lighting are energy efficient where;</p> <p>The average initial luminous efficiency is not less than 70 luminaire lumens per circuit Watt.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>All lighting is provided by the following lamp types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LED</li> <li>• Metal halide</li> <li>• Other lamp types with luminous efficiency is not less than 70 luminaire lumens per circuit Watt.</li> </ul>	C - F
4.	Automatic energy saving lighting controls include automatic on and off control to prevent operation during daylight hours or presence detection in areas of intermittent pedestrian traffic. Presence detectors must be compatible with the lamp type used as very frequent switching can reduce the life of some lamp types. Other forms of presence-related control could be used, provided that they switch off the lighting when nobody is in the space. For external lighting not fitted with presence detectors, time switches must provide automatic switch off lighting after a specified curfew hour, except in cases where there is a specific requirement for lighting to be left on all night	C - F
5.	Car park lighting control is classified as energy-efficient if it is equipped with a timer, motion sensor or dimming (if applicable).	D, F

## Methodology

### Temporary lighting, decorative lighting and floodlighting

Decorative lighting and floodlighting must be included in this issue, but temporary lighting such as theatrical stage or local display installations can be excluded.

### Emergency lighting

Emergency light fittings, including security lighting, that are also used for normal operation must be included in this issue, but lighting which only activates in an emergency can be excluded.

### Car park lighting

Car park lights on open terrain, open air, and covered car parks must be considered under this issue.

### Average initial luminous efficacy of the external light fittings

The individual luminous fluxes of all luminaires within the construction zone are summed (in lumens), then divided by the total circuit Watts for all the luminaires.

For lamps other than LED lamps, the luminous flux of a luminaire using those lamps can be determined by multiplying the sum of the luminous fluxes produced by all the lamps in the luminaire by the light output ratio of the luminaire (as confirmed by the luminaire manufacturer).

LED lamps are typically integral to the luminaire (LED luminaires). As such, the manufacturers' literature will encompass both lamp and luminaire as a whole.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	A list of the type of luminaires, the control scheme by the building manager (for example based on the long-term maintenance, operating and maintenance manual or instructions for use of the asset).
All	Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence.

## Definitions

### **Areas of intermittent pedestrian traffic:**

An area can be considered to have intermittent pedestrian traffic where a pedestrian is in or approaching the space less than two-thirds of the time during the period when the lighting, without presence detection, would be switched on.

### **Automatic control:**

An automatic external lighting control system prevents operation during daylight hours through either a time switch or a daylight sensor (a manually switched lighting circuit with daylight sensor or time switch override is also acceptable).

### **Car park associated with the asset:**

A car park is considered to be associated with the asset where it is under the same management as the asset and is intended for the use of asset occupants.

### **Daylight sensor:**

A type of sensor that detects daylight and switches lighting on at dusk and off at dawn.

### **External lighting:**

Building lighting and advertising lighting, lighting from the entrance, canopy lighting, lighting of paths, roads, parking lots, garages and other outdoor areas that belong to the plot of the building.

### **Presence detector:**

A sensor that can turn lighting on when a presence is detected in the scanned area, and off after a pre-set time when no presence is detected. Examples could include absence detection, where the light is switched on using a push button or similar control but switching off is done automatically; and key control in secure areas, where a swipe card or key pad is used on entering a space, and the lighting then comes on and remains on until the space is not occupied.

Presence related controls need careful design and commissioning to ensure that people cannot be left in the dark while still in the outdoor space.

### **Time switch:**

A switch with an inbuilt clock which will allow lighting to be switched on and off at programmed times



## Asset Performance:Ene 18 Energy efficient lifts



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Apartment buildings only

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions from energy efficient lifts.

### Question

Are the lifts that are installed in the building energy efficient?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes, all lifts are energy efficient

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where no lifts are present, the associated credit can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	A lift is energy efficient when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It has achieved energy efficiency class C or above when measured in accordance with ISO 25745-2</li> <li>The measurement has been performed by an independent organisation within the last 5 years.</li> </ol>	C
3.	If several lifts of the same type and year of manufacture are provided only a representative number needs to be measured. The approach should be accepted by the Assessor, but at least the elevator with the shortest floor distance should be included in the measurement.	C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
4.	With systems that are less than 5 years old, a calculation by the original supplier of the expected energy label can be considered as equivalent to measurement.	C
5.	<p>The following transport system types are excluded from consideration under this issue:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Vehicle lifts</li> <li>b. Wheelchair lifts</li> <li>c. Historical lifts, including those installed pre-1970 which are predominantly in their original state.</li> </ul>	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Building plans with locations of the lifts.
All	Documentation from the type of lifts used.
2	The measured power consumption from the lifts is calculated following of ISO 25745 (if applicable).
All	Visual inspection from the Assessor with photographic evidence.

## Definitions

### Lift:

A conveyor system that, by means of a cage moves along fixed, relative to the horizontal plane more than 15 degrees inclined leaders, and which is intended for transport of:

- a. People;
- b. People and goods
- c. Goods only if the cage is reachable (that is to say that a person may enter it without difficulty) and fitted with controls that are located in the car or within the reach of the person contained;
- d. Lifts following a fixed course and with a lifting speed greater than 0.15 m/s, if they do not move along guides which are rigid are also included (for example, scissor lifts).



## Asset Performance: Transport



### Summary

This category encourages the provision of improved access to local amenities and sustainable modes of transport, for example, public transport and other alternative transport solutions for building users. This facilitates travel modes that reduce car journeys, and consequently, congestion and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions over the life of the asset while encouraging physical activity to improve human health.

### Context

Cities around the world are actively looking at ways of improving quality of life, air quality, congestion and the ease of movement of people through urban environments. Goal 11 of the United Nations' SDGs focuses on sustainable cities and communities, and recommends 'to bike, walk or use public transportations to keep our cities' air clean'. One of its targets is to 'provide access to safe, affordable, accessible and sustainable transport systems for all, improving road safety, notably by expanding public transport by 2030'.

Reduction in the use of private car trips is a key focus area and there are increasingly stronger controls on private car use to reduce dependency on them. Alternative transport options such as cycling offer a route to addressing transport-related greenhouse gas emissions as well as reducing congestion.

Clear links between the air quality and heart and brain health have been made in numerous scientific studies. It is estimated that outdoor air pollution causes 4.2 million premature deaths annually worldwide. Air pollution damages plants and animals, as well as impacting biodiversity and crop yields. By reducing air pollution levels, the burden of disease from stroke, heart disease, lung cancer and respiratory diseases can be lessened.

## Issues

<b>Tra 01</b>	<b>Alternative modes of transport</b>	<b>9 credits</b>
---------------	---------------------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To maximise the potential for alternative local public, private and active transport modes through provision of sustainable transport measures appropriate to the site.

**Value:**

Encourages the use of active travel and reduce the dependency on private cars.

Promotes provision of electric car recharging stations and reduced reliance on petrol and diesel-fuelled cars.

<b>Tra 02</b>	<b>Proximity to public transport</b>	<b>8 credits</b>
---------------	--------------------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To ensure appropriate public transport provision is available to building users, thereby helping to reduce transport-related pollution and congestion.

**Value:**

Raises awareness, understanding and accessibility of alternative travel options.

Encourages more sustainable transport and movement of people.

<b>Tra 03</b>	<b>Proximity to amenities</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
---------------	-------------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To ensure residents have appropriate access to amenities near to the asset, consequently reducing transport-related impacts.

**Value:**

Ensures provision of local amenities facilitating a reduction in short trips.

Reduces residents' carbon emissions and associated negative environmental impacts, improving local air quality and reducing local congestion.

<b>Tra 04</b>	<b>Cyclist safety</b>	<b>2 credits</b>
---------------	-----------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To encourage the provision of safe access around the site and outdoor space that enhances the well-being of building users as they move around.

**Value:**

Ensures safe access to and safe movement around the site.

Facilitates the activities that can have physical, mental and social benefits for occupants supporting enhanced well-being, productivity and staff retention.

Adds to the desirability of the building, helping to increase its value and appeal to owners, occupants, tenants and neighbours.



## Asset Performance: Tra 01 Alternative modes of transport



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To maximise the potential for local public, private and active transport through provision of sustainable transport measures appropriate to the site.

### Question

What provisions are available to residents for alternative modes of transport?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	None
1	C.	The home is within proximity of a public bicycle sharing system
2	D.	Minimum number of compliant cycle storage
1	E.	Additional compliant cycle spaces are in place.
1	F.	The home is within proximity of an electric charging point.
2	G.	Electric charging is provided for ≥5% of the car parking capacity.
1	H.	The home is within proximity of a compliant car club.
1	I.	The home is within proximity of a compliant car club where at least 60% of the vehicles are hybrid or electric.

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p><b>Filtering</b></p> <p>Where no car parking spaces are provided, this answer option can be filtered out of the assessment.</p>	G
2.	<p>Public bicycle sharing systems must comply with the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) The program is implemented by the municipality or through a public-private partnership.</li> <li>b) The system must be open to casual users who wish to use them for one-way rides to work, education or shopping centres.</li> <li>c) Bicycles are available at unattended urban locations; and they operate in a manner that could be seen as 'bicycle transit'.</li> <li>d) Service terminals must be available throughout the city.</li> <li>e) The average distance between service terminals is 500m maximum in inner city areas.</li> <li>f) A service terminal is available within 500m of the Home.</li> <li>g) The station terminals do not need to comply with the cycle rack requirements listed above.</li> </ul>	C
3.	<p>Cycle storage facilities:</p> <p>The number of facilities required is outlined in the Checklists and Tables section</p> <p>Cycle storage facilities should have the following features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Cycles can be secured within spaces, with fixings for one or more cycles. The fixings should allow both the wheel and frame to be locked securely. Spaces are covered overhead, and the cycle spaces are set in or fixed to a permanent structure (building or hardstanding). Alternatively, the cycle storage may be located in a locked structure fixed to, or part of, a permanent structure with appropriate surveillance.</li> <li>b) The distance between each cycle space, and cycle space and other obstructions, e.g. a wall, allows for appropriate access to the cycle storage space to enable bikes to be easily stored and accessed.</li> <li>c) The facilities are in a prominent site location that is viewable or overlooked from either an occupied building or a main access to a building. In the scenario where cycle storage spaces are within the building, prominent signage should be provided to advertise their location to building users and cyclists.</li> <li>d) The cycle storage facility has adequate lighting.</li> <li>e) The provision of cycle storage that is only suitable for folding bicycles or scooters is not compliant.</li> </ul>	C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	f) The majority of racks are within 100m of the main building entrance.	
4.	<p>Car clubs should have the following features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Accessible to the occupants. The car club should be within 650m walking distances from the home via a safe pedestrian route.</li> <li>b) Cars can be rented by the hour and day</li> <li>c) Fuel and insurance are included</li> <li>d) They benefit from self-service reservation, pick-up, and return</li> <li>e) Available 24hr</li> <li>f) Dedicated parking space</li> <li>g) Have sufficient provision of cars to cater to the expected demands of the whole development</li> </ul>	I, J
5.	<p>Electric car provisions:</p> <p>Electric recharging stations with a minimum of 7kW have been provided.</p>	F, G

## Methodology

### Number of compliant electric charging points

The number of charging points required should be calculated as a percentage of the total car parking capacity. If the number of charging facilities that should be supplied is not a whole number, it must be rounded up to the nearest whole number. For example, where the number of charging facilities that should be provided is calculated to be 10.2, the actual number of facilities that must be provided is 11.

Charging points for Car Clubs cannot count towards percentage provided for residents.

## Checklists and Tables

### Number of compliant cycle storage facilities

Cycle storage facilities must be provided must be compliant with Table 20 below.

Table 20: Compliant cycle storage facilities

Home Size	1 credit	2 credits
Studio or 1 bedroom	1 cycle space for every 2 homes	1 cycle space per home
2 and 3 bedrooms	1 cycle space per home	2 cycle spaces per home
4 bedrooms and above	2 cycle spaces per home	4 cycle spaces per home

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
All	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of (where applicable): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) cycle racks</li> <li>b) electric car recharging stations</li> <li>c) Car Clubs</li> </ul>
1 - 6	Calculations showing the numbers of cycle storage required
1 - 6	Site/building plan showing location and numbers of cycle storage
7	Calculations showing the percentage of electric vehicle charging stations
7	Site plan showing the location and number of electric vehicle charging stations
8	Site plan showing the location of Car Clubs

## Definitions

### Main building entrance:

The main building entrance is the entrance to the assessed building which is directly connected to the main building reception, circulation routes, lifts or stairs, and is available to the majority of the building's staff and visitors on arrival. It is not the site entrance (unless the site entrance is also the building entrance, e.g. building with a boundary on a public highway).

### Safe pedestrian routes:

These include, but not limited to, pavements and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points. An element of Assessor judgement is required and if in doubt, their justification of safe crossing points should be provided.

## Additional information

### Public bicycle sharing systems

Bicycle sharing systems are increasingly popular and diverse systems that have appeared over the past few years in major cities, whereby a number of bicycles are made available for shared use amongst people who do not own a bicycle. The central concept of many of the systems is free or affordable access to bicycles for city transport in order to reduce the use of automobiles for short trips inside the city thereby diminishing traffic congestion, noise and air-pollution.



## Asset Performance: Tra 02 Proximity to public transport



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To ensure appropriate public transport provision is available to building occupants, thereby helping to reduce transport-related pollution and congestion.

### Question

Is the asset within walking distance of public transport node which operate a frequent service?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
1	B.	Public transport node over 1km away from the home, with a 30 minute service frequency at peak times
2	C.	Public transport node over 1km away from the home, with a 15 minute service frequency at peak times
3	D.	Public transport node within 1km of the home, with a 30 minute service frequency at peak times
4	E.	Public transport node within 500m of the home, with a 30 minute service frequency at peak times
6	F.	Public transport node within 1km of the home, with a 15 minute service frequency at peak times
8	G.	Public transport node within 500m of the home, with a 15 minute service frequency at peak times
0	H.	No public transport node in place that meets the above criteria

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	The distance must be measured via safe pedestrian routes and not be measured in a straight line.	B - G
2.	Services that operate from more than one stop within proximity of the building, i.e. two separate bus stops served by the same bus, must be considered only once; at the stop in closest proximity to the Home. Different services at the same stop can be considered as separate.	B - G

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	Annotated map demonstrating the route and distance to public transport nodes.
1	Photographic evidence of public transport networks and safe pedestrian route(s).
2	Copies of public transport network timetables.

## Definitions

### Compliant transport node:

A compliant node includes any bus service or railway station. The service stopping at each node must provide transport from, or onward travel to, either an urban centre, major transport node or a community focal point, e.g. doctor's surgery, library, school or village centre. Only local services should be assessed, and any national public transport services should be excluded from the analysis, unless such a service can be said to provide a local commuter service.

### Peak times:

This is when a typical resident would be commuting to and from work, e.g. 06:30 – 09:30 and 16:00 – 19:00). This may be different in different countries and may even change throughout a year. Assessors should use their judgement to establish reasonable peak times.

### Safe pedestrian routes:

These include, but are not limited to, pavements and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points. An element of Assessor judgement is required and if in doubt, their justification of safe crossing points should be provided.



## Asset Performance: Tra 03 Proximity to amenities



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To ensure building users have appropriate access to amenities local to the home, therefore reducing transport related impacts.

### Question

Is the asset within walking distance of amenities?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
1	B.	2 amenities are within 1km of the asset
2	C.	2 amenities are within 500m of the asset
2	D.	4 or more amenities are within 1km of the asset
4	E.	4 or more amenities are within 500m of the asset
0	F.	None of the above

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	The distance must be measured via safe pedestrian routes and not be measured in a straight line.	B - E
2.	Amenities include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Supermarket or grocery store</li> <li>b) Family doctor's surgery or general medical centre</li> <li>c) Access to a recreation or leisure facility for fitness or sport</li> <li>d) Access to cash</li> </ul>	B - E

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e) Appropriate food outlet</li> <li>f) Childcare facility/school</li> <li>g) Community facility</li> <li>h) Over the counter services associated with a pharmacy</li> <li>i) Publicly available postal facility</li> </ul>	

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	<p>Where amenities listed are external to the asset:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Annotated map demonstrating the route and distance to amenities listed by the client.</li> <li>b) Photographic evidence of listed amenities and safe pedestrian route(s).</li> </ul>
All	<p>Where amenities listed are contained within the asset:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Asset floor plans with location of amenities indicated.</li> <li>b) Photographic evidence of listed amenities and safe pedestrian route(s).</li> </ul>

## Definitions

### Access to a recreation or leisure facility:

A facility that will allow building users to exercise and maintain a healthy lifestyle. This could include a local leisure centre, tennis courts, an on-site gym or, for a school, a local playground.

### Access to cash:

Access to cash should be available to the residents 24 hours a day. This should not require a prior purchase of goods and should provide access to other services, such as checking account balances. Cash-back from the till in a retail outlet is not compliant.

### Appropriate food outlet:

A means of accessing a food supply that is affordable to the majority of the building's users, as well as being appropriate for their day-to-day needs. For example, a residential dwelling would benefit from having a restaurant in the local area.

### Childcare or school:

The intention of this amenity is to provide child support for potential building users; this could include a nursery, child minding facilities or a school local to the development.

### Community facility:

An internal space that is inclusive to the majority of residents. The facility will serve to facilitate community activities for the residents. For example, this could be a community hall.

**Safe pedestrian routes:**

These include, but are not limited to, pavements and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points. An element of Assessor judgement is required and if in doubt, their justification of safe crossing points should be provided.



## Asset Performance: Tra 04 Cyclist safety



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To encourage the provision of safe access around the site and outdoor space that enhances the wellbeing of residents of the home.

### Question

Is the site connected to a safe cycle route via a safe pedestrian route?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	There are safe pedestrian routes from the cycle storage to the entrance of the home (communal entrance of the building for an apartment block)
1	D.	The home is connected to a safe cycle route via a safe pedestrian route

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there is no communal cycle storage provided this answer option can be filtered out of the assessment.	C

### Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.

Criteria	Evidence requirement
All	Copy of site map indicating location of service delivery areas in relation to other areas to indicate that these are separate.
All	Photographic evidence of the service delivery areas and safe pedestrian route(s)

## Definitions

### Safe pedestrian routes:

Include, but are not limited to, pavements and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points. An element of Assessor judgement is required and if in doubt, their justification of safe crossing points should be provided.

### Cycle routes:

A compliant cycle route should meet one or more of the following: Cyclists can share the road with vehicles on single track roads. Cyclists can share the road with vehicles on roads with low traffic volumes and speeds (20mph). Shared cyclist and pedestrian routes need to be a minimum of 3m wide. Dedicated cycle lanes (segregated or unsegregated from roads), with one-way cycle lanes being a minimum of 2.2m wide and two-way cycle lanes a minimum of 3m wide).



## Asset Performance: Water



### Summary

This category encourages sustainable water use throughout the operation of the asset and associated site. This ensures that the asset is set up to reduce the use of potable water (both internally and externally) over the lifetime of the building. This includes minimising losses through leakage.

### Context

Water efficiency has been one of the areas highlighted within the UN Sustainable Development Goals. Goal 6 (Clean Water and Sanitation) states that by 2030 we need to “substantially increase water-use efficiency across all sectors and ensure sustainable withdrawals and supply of freshwater to address water scarcity and substantially reduce the number of people suffering from water scarcity.”

Due to increasing population densities and high levels of water consumption, globally there are water shortages which are only likely to get worse over time as water demand is projected to increase by 55% between 2000 and 2050<sup>2</sup>. Additionally, the energy required for the extraction, purification, delivery, heating/cooling treatment and disposal of water (and wastewater) contributes to climate change and air quality issues. Reducing water consumption by increasing efficient use is, therefore, crucial to try and guarantee enough supply to meet the future demand and address climate change.

---

<sup>2</sup> OECD (2012a), OECD Environmental Outlook to 2050: The Consequence of Inaction, OECD Publishing, Paris

## Issues

### Wat 01 Water monitoring

3 credits

**Aim:**

To reduce the consumption of water in buildings through the effective management and monitoring of water consumption.

**Value:**

Increase awareness of water usage within the building.

Identify and monitor large water uses and changed consumption levels to improve management and maintenance as well as to encourage reductions in unnecessary consumption.

### Wat 02 Water efficient equipment: toilets

4 credits

**Aim:**

To reduce water consumption by encouraging the specification of water efficient toilets.

**Value:**

Improving water efficiency and reducing the cost related to water consumption in use.

Reducing water use, thereby helping to conserve stretched water reserves at times of shortage.

Promote innovation and the manufacture of more water efficient equipment.

### Wat 03 Water efficient equipment: urinals

-

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International scheme.

### Wat 04 Water efficient equipment: hand washing basins

4 credits

**Aim:**

To reduce water consumption by encouraging specification of water efficient taps.

**Value:**

See Wat 02 Value section.

### Wat 05 Water efficient equipment: showers and baths

4 credits

**Aim:**

To reduce water consumption by encouraging the specification of water efficient showers and baths.

**Value:**

See Wat 02 Value section.

### Wat 06 Water efficient equipment: appliances

4 credits

**Aim:**

To reduce water consumption by encouraging the specification of water efficient appliances.

**Value:**

See Wat 02 Value section.

**Wat 07    Leak detection system****2 credits****Aim:**

To reduce the consumption of water in buildings through minimising wastage due to water leaks.

**Value:**

Reduce potable water wastage associated with leaks.

Minimise damage, costs and disruption arising from water leaks.

Reduce costs related to water consumption.

**Wat 08    Leak prevention****2 credits****Aim:**

To reduce the impact of water leaks in areas that are not occupied that may otherwise go undetected.

**Value:**

See Wat 07 value section.

**Wat 09    Isolation valves****4 credits****Aim:**

To minimise unnecessary water consumption by reducing the demand for utility-supplied water within the asset.

**Value:**

Reduce potable water wastage associated with leaks.

Minimise damage, costs and disruption arising from water leaks.

Allows easier replacement and maintenance of water equipment.

**Wat 10    Reducing utility-supplied water consumption****2 credits****Aim:**

To minimise unnecessary water consumption by reducing the demand for utility-supplied water within the asset.

**Value:**

Reduces water industry greenhouse gas emissions, pollution impacts and associated costs at the level of water infrastructure provision.

Reducing water use, thereby helping to conserve stretched water reserves at times of shortage.



## Asset Performance: Wat 01 Water monitoring



Credits

Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects - Answer D applies to Apartments only

### Aim

To reduce the consumption of water in buildings through the effective management and monitoring of water consumption.

### Question

To what level is water consumption metered?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	Not metered
1	C.	Site – where water consumption is metered for the whole site
1	D.	Building – where water consumption is metered at the whole building level
1	E.	Home – where water consumption is metered at the home level

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	A water meter is installed and only measures the relevant water supply.	C, D
2.	Each water meter has the ability to have instantaneous reading (e.g. has a pulsed output) and enables connection to a Building Management System (BMS) for the monitoring of water consumption.  Note: water meters do not necessarily have to be connected to a BMS, as long as they have the ability to be connected to a BMS at a later time.	C, D
3.	Where water is metered and monitored at site level, the water meters must measure all water that is utilised on-site, including, but not limited to:  a) Utility supply	C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	b) Rainwater harvesting c) Greywater harvesting d) Blackwater harvesting	

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1 - 4	Copies of site/building/asset plans, indicating where water meters are located.
1 - 4	Photographic evidence of installed water meters.
1 - 4	Copy of most current water meter readings to confirm that all meters are working.

## Definitions

### **Blackwater:**

Wastewater that has been discharged from kitchen and utility sinks, urinals and toilets within the asset.

### **Greywater:**

Water that has been discharged from all sources other than kitchen and sewage within the asset.

### **Utility-supplied water:**

Water that has been provided by an organisation that supplies a public service under regulation by the Government (e.g. mains water)



## Asset Performance: Wat 02 Water efficient equipment: toilets



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects – Answers B - D apply to Apartments only

### Aim

To reduce water consumption by encouraging the specification of water efficient toilets.

### Question

What is the effective flush volume (EFV) of the toilets?

Credits	Answer	Select an answer from B - D and E - G
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	Toilets in communal areas have an Efv of > 6l
1	C.	All toilets in communal areas have an Efv of ≤ 6l
2	D.	All toilets in communal areas have an Efv of ≤ 4.5l
0	E.	Toilets within the home have an Efv of > 6l
1	F.	All toilets within the home have an Efv of ≤ 6l
2	G.	All toilets within the home have an Efv of ≤ 4.5l

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there are no toilets in the communal area of the building this answer option can be filtered out of the assessment	B – D
2.	For dual flush toilets the effective flush volume will need to be calculated. An explanation and worked example are available in the Methodology section.	B – G
3.	Installing water efficient toilets can cause blockages in pipework that may have been designed for larger volumes of water. In assets where this might	D, G

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	be a problem, toilets should be specified to avoid this, e.g. those with a full flush of at least 6l, or pump assisted toilets.	

## Methodology

### Effective Flush Volume of a Dual Flush Toilet

The effective flush volume of a **dual flush toilet** is the ratio of full flush to reduced flush. This is taken to be one full flush for every two reduced flushes for domestic buildings.

The effective flush volume would therefore be calculated as follows, using a 6/4 litre dual flush volume toilet as an example:

$$\frac{(6L \times 1) + (4L \times 2)}{3} = 4.67L \text{ EFV}$$

### Assessor checks

An adequate proportion of toilets within the asset need to be checked. It is not necessary to check all toilets. At least 10% of toilets within the building should be observed.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Manufacturer/supplier literature of installed toilets (if available).
All	Photographic evidence of low flush toilets; a representative sample is sufficient.
All	Copies of asset floor plans and/or inventory of sanitary elements indicating the location and quantity of toilets.
All	If manufacturer information is unavailable: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Photographic evidence of information on cistern to identify flow rate</li> <li>Copy of liaisons with manufacturer confirming toilet is low flush</li> <li>Assessor comment to justify the reason why the toilet is deemed to be low flush</li> <li>EFV calculation</li> </ol>

## Definitions

### **Effective flush volume (EFV):**

Effective flush volume is the volume of water needed to clear the toilet and transport any contents far enough to avoid blocking the drain. The effective flush volume of a single flush toilet is the volume of water used for one flush.



## Asset Performance: Wat 03 Water efficient equipment: urinals



Credits

No Minimum Standard

### Applicability – n/a

To issue in not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.



## Asset Performance: Wat 04 Water efficient equipment: taps



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects – Answer C applies to Apartments only

### Aim

To reduce water consumption by encouraging specification of water efficient taps.

### Question

Are the hand wash basin and kitchen taps low water use?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, all hand washing basin and kitchen taps in communal areas are low water use
2	D.	Yes, all hand washing basin and kitchen taps within homes are low water use

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there are no hand wash basins or kitchen taps in communal areas that answer option can be filtered out of the assessment.	C
2.	Hand washing basin taps must have a maximum flow rate that is less than 5 Litres per minute.	C, D
3.	Kitchen sink taps must have a maximum flow rate that is less than 6Litres per minute.	C, D

### Methodology

#### Assessor checks

An adequate proportion of wash basins and kitchen taps within the asset need to be checked to determine whether they are low water use, although it is not necessary to check them all. At least 10% of the wash basins and kitchen taps within the asset must be observed.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of installed hand washing basins; a representative sample is sufficient.
All	Manufacturer/supplier literature of water efficient specifications.
All	Copies asset floor plans and/or inventory of sanitary elements identifying the location and quantity of hand wash basins.
All	Where manufacturer information is not available, evidence must be provided that confirms that the taps meet the stated criteria. This could include measured flow rates or confirmation from the manufacturer that the installed taps meet the criteria.

## Additional information

### Examples of low water taps

Types of low water use hand washing basin taps include, but are not limited to:

- a) Spray taps
- b) Aerated taps.



## Asset Performance: Wat 05 Water efficient equipment: showers and baths



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To reduce water consumption by encouraging the specification of water efficient showers and baths.

### Question

Are the showerheads and bathtubs low water use?

Credits	Answer	Select either answer C or D, and either answer E or F
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	All showerheads have a maximum flow rate less than 8 litres per minute
2	D.	All showerheads have a maximum flow rate less than 6 litres per minute
2	E.	All bathtubs must have a maximum capacity of 170 litres
2	F.	No bathtubs in place

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Only showerheads and bathtubs within the homes need to be assessed.	B - F

### Methodology

#### Assessor checks

An adequate proportion of showers heads and/ or bathtubs within the asset need to be checked to determine whether they are low water use, although it is not necessary to check them all. At least 10% of showers within the building must be observed.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of installed showerheads and/or bathtubs.
All	Manufacturer/supplier literature of water efficient specifications.
All	Where manufacturer information is not available, evidence must be provided that confirms that the showers and bathtubs meet the stated criteria.  This could include; - <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• measured flow rates of showerheads</li><li>• measured dimensions of bathtubs (e.g. if a bath is assumed to be a cuboid a simple Height x Depth x Width calculation will overestimate the volume of the bathtub which would be acceptable)</li><li>• confirmation from the manufacturer that the installed showerheads and bathtubs meet the criteria.</li></ul>



## Asset Performance: Wat 06 Water efficient equipment: appliances



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects – Answer C applies to Apartments only

### Aim

To reduce water consumption by encouraging the specification of water efficient appliances.

### Question

Are the dishwashers and washing machines low water use?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, all communal washing machines are low water use
2	D.	Yes, all washing machines and/or dishwashers within the home are low water use

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where no washing machines are installed in the common areas the answer option can be filtered out of the assessment.	C
2.	This issue only covers washing machines and dishwashers that are the responsibility of the management organisation.	D
3.	In order to be awarded the relevant credits, baseline water usage of installed equipment must be equal to or below the figures as outlined in Table 21.	C, D

## Checklists and tables

Table 21: Baseline figures for white goods

Component	Baseline
Domestic sized dishwasher (if applicable)	2750 L/year
Domestic sized washing machine (if applicable)	10,000 L/Year

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of listed appliances.
All	Manufacturer specifications of appliances installed in the asset.



## Asset Performance: Wat 07 Leak detection system



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Apartments only

### Aim

To reduce the consumption of water in buildings through minimising wastage due to water leaks.

### Question

Does the asset have an automated leak detection system?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	A leak detection system should have the ability to automatically detect the presence of a water leak throughout the water supply within a building. It does not necessarily require a system that directly detects water leakage along part or the whole length of the water supply system e.g. a system that detects higher than normal flow rates at meters and/or sub-meters would be compliant. The system can be flow based or sensor based.	C
2.	The leak detection system should be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Able to easily identify any detected leaks</li> <li>Activated when a continuous flow of water passes through the water meter at a flow rate above a pre-set minimum for a pre-set period of time</li> <li>On all the pipework in a development that management organisation has responsibility for</li> </ol>	C
3.	The system does not need to cut off the water supply when the alarm is triggered.	C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
4.	Where there is a water supply company meter at the site/building boundary, it may be necessary to install a separate flow meter (or alternative measurement system) just after the water supply company meter to detect leaks. However, if the water supply company agrees to some form of leak detection being installed on their meter, this would also be acceptable.	C
5.	In order to be compliant, emergency systems such as fire hydrants and sprinklers need also to be covered by a leak detection system.	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of leak detection system.
All	Manufacturer specifications of system.



## Asset Performance: Wat 08 Leak prevention



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Apartments only

### Aim

To reduce the impact of water leaks in areas that are not occupied that may otherwise go undetected.

### Question

Are communal toilet or shower areas fitted with controls that isolate water supply when they are unoccupied?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there are no communal toilet or shower areas this question can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	The following could be considered as types of flow control devices: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A time controller, i.e. an automatic time switch device to switch off the water supply after a predetermined interval</li> <li>• A programmed time controller, i.e. an automatic time switch device to switch water on or off at predetermined times</li> <li>• A volume controller, i.e. an automatic control device to turn off the water supply once the maximum preset volume is reached</li> <li>• A presence detector and controller, i.e. an automatic device detecting occupancy or movement in an area to switch water on and turn it off when the presence is removed</li> </ul>	C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A central control unit, i.e. a dedicated computer-based control unit for an overall managed water control system, utilising some or all of the types of control elements listed above.</li> </ul>	
3.	Proximity detection shut off is not required for each individual toilet or shower, but the requirement is for the cold-water supply to be isolated for each block of facilities.	C
4.	Programmable timed controllers linked to the shut-off device are an acceptable means of compliance for facilities where constant use is to be expected during operating hours.	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of water shut off controls.
All	Manufacturer specifications of shut off controls.
All	Systematic diagram showing the areas of isolation.



## Asset Performance: Wat 09 Isolation valves



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects – Answer C applies to Apartments only

### Aim

To minimise unnecessary water consumption due to defects and to minimise disruption during maintenance.

### Question

Do all water using fixtures and appliances have isolation valves fitted?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, in communal areas
2	D.	Yes, within the homes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where no water equipment is installed within the communal areas the answer option can be filtered out of the assessment.	C
2.	Evidence illustrates that isolation valves are installed for relevant equipment within the asset. Relevant equipment includes (but is not limited to): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Wash basin</li> <li>b) Shower</li> <li>c) Toilet</li> <li>d) Washing machine</li> <li>e) Dishwasher</li> </ul>	B - F

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
3.	If isolation valves are fitted to areas in which water using appliances are installed, such as a bathroom or kitchens, the aim of the credit would be met.	B - F
4.	Isolation valves are classified as any valve in the pipe which prevents the flow of water to a specific piece of equipment or area.	B - F
5.	Isolation valves must be easily accessible.	B - F
6.	Isolation valves can be automatic or manual.	B - F

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of water isolation controls.



## Asset Performance: Wat 10 Reducing utility-supplied water consumption



Credits

No Minimum Standard

Applicability: All projects

### Aim

To minimise unnecessary water consumption by reducing the demand for utility-supplied water within the asset.

### Question

Does the asset harvest and reuse greywater, blackwater or rainwater?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where Legislative requirements prevent use of non-utility supplied water within the asset this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	Greywater, blackwater or rainwater water should produce a reasonable reduction in the consumption of utility supplied water.	C

### Specific notes

Asset type specific	
1.	<b>Apartments</b> Greywater, blackwater or rainwater systems would meet the requirements for this issue. These systems do not need to supply all units, but they should be designed to make maximum practical use of non-utility supplied water sources.

Asset type specific	
2.	<p><b>Homes</b></p> <p>In individual homes with a garden, the provision of a water butt/rain barrel is sufficient to demonstrate compliance with the criteria. No requirements are set on the type of water butt/rain barrel or storage capacity required. The Assessor should be satisfied that, within reason, the installation is adequate for the size of development and climatic conditions of the region.</p>

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence of non-utility supplied water source.
All	Manufacturer information.
All	Where legislative requirements prevent the use of non-utility supplied water, copy of relevant legislation.

## Definitions

### **Blackwater:**

Wastewater that has been discharged from kitchen and utility sinks, urinals and toilets within the asset.

### **Greywater:**

Water that has been discharged from all sources other than kitchen and sewage within the asset..

### **Utility-supplied water:**

Water that has been provided by an organisation that supplies a public service under regulation by the Government (e.g. mains water)

## Additional information

### **Uses of non-utility supplied water**

Usage of rainwater and greywater include (but are not limited to):

- a) Irrigation for landscaping
- b) Toilet flushing
- c) Car washing
- d) Washing clothes



## Asset Performance: Resources



### Summary

This category encourages the responsible and circular use of physical resources in the asset to increase value and sustainability performance in operation and at the end of life. This is achieved by encouraging the asset operator to better understand the condition and value of the asset, and to maintain or improve its value and the construction products it contains within it. In addition, a more circular use of waste resources generated during the operation of the asset is encouraged by rewarding appropriate sorting and storing facilities.

### Context

The operational phase of an asset life cycle is a very significant consumer of resources and sources of waste at the end of useful life. Many key resources are non-renewable and are becoming scarce, more costly and riskier to extract. Furthermore, the supply-chain extraction and processing activity required to create products, particularly from raw materials, frequently leads to social and environmental degradation. It is essential that the real estate sector does all it can to address these challenges by using existing assets for as long as possible; maintaining or increasing the value of the resources they contain; enabling the reuse or recycling of resources in existing assets; facilitating occupants to maximise the reuse and recycling of their waste; minimising resource use overall; choosing reused or recycled resources instead of virgin materials; and using resources that cause less harm to society and the environment.

## Issues

<b>Rsc 01</b>	<b>Condition survey</b>	<b>7 credits</b>
---------------	-------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To encourage asset owners to understand the physical condition of their property, to plan scheduled maintenance, repair or refurbishment activities and avoid higher impact and more costly works later. To achieve or exceed the expected life of the asset.

**Value:**

Improves the health and safety performance off the asset to reduce risks to occupants.

Identifies current and future repair, refurbishment or renovation requirements.

Reduces life cycle costs by tackling repair, refurbishment or renovation requirements before they become more significant and costlier to resolve.

Reduces the chance of early obsolescence due to neglect and/or increase the life of the asset, capturing more value from the resources already invested.

<b>Rsc 02</b>	<b>Reuse and recycling facilities</b>	<b>6 credits</b>
<b>+ 1 Exemplary</b>		

**Aim:**

To facilitate the reuse and recycling of waste from the asset.

**Value:**

Helps to meet corporate and statutory waste recycling targets.

Reduces environmental impacts and costs arising from the disposal of waste.

Ensures that asset users have the facilities to enable them to sort waste at source rather than paying for this to be carried out off-site.

Provides convenient and well-integrated material storage areas in suitable locations.

Enables and supports the realisation of circular economy principles.

Avoids unnecessary and costly replacement of entire material and product installations by providing storage space for like-for-like replacement products.

<b>Rsc 03</b>	<b>Resources inventory</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
---------------	----------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To enable asset owners to recognise, maintain and benefit from the value of resources in the asset. To increase the reuse and recycling of resources and reduce the use of virgin materials.

**Value:**

Reduces waste and cost associated with future refurbishment or fit-out works and ultimately in demolition.

Increases the lifetime value of materials and products.

Enables and supports the realisation of circular economy principles.

Identifies materials and products the asset is constructed from so that the value of the asset as a 'materials bank' is known.

#### Rsc 04 Future adaptation

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.



## Asset Performance: Rsc 01 Condition survey



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To encourage asset owners to understand the physical condition of their property, to plan scheduled maintenance, repair or refurbishment activities and avoid higher impact and more costly works later. To achieve or exceed the expected life of the asset.

### Question

Has a condition survey been completed within the last 5 years?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No condition survey has been carried out
1	C.	A condition survey has been carried out by the organisation managing the asset
2	D.	A condition survey has been carried out by the organisation managing the asset following a third-party procedure
3	E.	A condition survey has been carried out by an independent third party

Has work been conducted to rectify any defects identified?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option (if C, D or E has been selected above).
0	F.	No works have been carried out to rectify defects identified and there is no action plan.
1	G.	No works have been carried out to rectify defects identified, but there is an action plan in place which establishes when defects will be rectified
2	H.	All major defects have been rectified
3	I.	All major defects have been rectified and an action plan confirms when the remaining minor defects will be rectified
4	J.	All identified major and minor defects have been rectified

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p><b>Filtering</b></p> <p>If the asset is less than 5 years old and no condition survey has been undertaken, this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.</p>	All
2.	<p>A condition survey shall assess the condition of the asset, in terms of the main building elements, components and construction products; both external/internal fabric and building services, including as a minimum (but not limited to):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Structural condition</li> <li>b) Condition of electrical components</li> <li>c) Condition of plumbing</li> <li>d) Fire protection</li> <li>e) Communications and life safety systems</li> <li>f) Health and Safety conditions and environmental conditions; including, but not limited to:</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Damp</li> <li>ii. Cold</li> <li>iii. Draughts</li> <li>iv. Acoustic and noise penetration</li> <li>v. Ventilation</li> <li>vi. Daylight</li> <li>vii. Pests</li> </ul>	C - E
3.	Criteria for repairing or renewing defective elements should be established to ensure work prioritisation, including major or minor categorisation.	F - J
4.	The condition survey provides recommendations for future ongoing maintenance, repair, replacement and refurbishment for the remaining life of the asset.	F - J
5.	The condition survey must be by a competent person.	C - J

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	Assets that are less than 5 years old will require appropriate documentation to demonstrate the asset's age. In the UK, this could include public records of property registration.
2 - 5	The current conditions survey documentation.
5	The name and organisation (and third-party certification where available) of the party that carried out the condition survey. Information regarding the relevant qualifications and experience of the person who has undertaken the condition survey.

## Definitions

### Competent person:

a person that is trained and qualified to conduct condition surveys in accordance with legislative requirements (if any) and has led or made a significant contribution to at least 2 condition surveys of assets of a comparable function type, size and age in the last 5 years.

The following examples may be considered competent (see definitions):

- a) Facilities management/asset management professionals
- b) Civil engineers or other relevant engineering disciplines
- c) Architects
- d) Building surveyors
- e) Members of institutions whom have undergone appropriate due diligence or training to conduct condition surveys

### Major defects:

Defects that need to be addressed in order for the asset to operate and function correctly.

### Minor defects:

Defects that do not currently adversely affect the function of the building but may do in the future if left unrectified. Or, are of only a cosmetic nature with no functional requirement.

### Third party:

"A person or body that is recognised as being independent of the parties involved, as concerns the issue in question" (BS EN 15804:2012+A1:2013)

The issues in question are those that are being certified/verified (rather than something unconnected).

For this BREEAM issue, a third party would be independent of the organisation(s) who manage, own, or occupy the asset.



## Asset Performance: Rsc 02 Reuse and recycling facilities



Credits

Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To facilitate the reuse and recycling of waste from the asset.

### Question

Are suitable facilities available for segregating and storing waste from the asset at the curb side or within the building to enable optimal reuse or recycling?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, for at least 3 separate residential waste streams
1	D.	Yes, for composting or garden waste

Are suitable neighbourhood recycling facilities available for segregating and storing waste from the asset to enable optimal reuse or recycling?

Credits	Answer	Select either G or H, Answer I can be selected independently
0	E.	Question not answered
0	F.	No
1	G.	Yes, within 500m of the home, via a safe pedestrian route, there is a collection point for at least 3 separate waste streams
2	H.	Yes, within 500m of the home, via a safe pedestrian route, there is a collection point for at least 5 separate waste streams
1	I.	Within 10km distance from the home a permanent local waste collection facility/recycle center available or a mobile bulky waste collection service is provided at least twice a year where households can bring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Furniture</li> </ul>

Credits	Answer	Select either G or H, Answer I can be selected independently
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Small household electrical devices;</li> <li>• White goods</li> <li>• Garden waste</li> <li>• DIY waste</li> </ul>

Is suitable space available for segregating and storing construction waste and reusable construction products?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	J.	Question not answered
0	K.	No
Exemplary	L.	A suitable construction waste management space is available for the optimal sorting, storing and collecting of construction waste generated during resident fit-out works.

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>Residential waste streams can include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Glass (Different coloured glass is classed as one waste stream)</li> <li>• Paper/cardboard</li> <li>• Aluminium cans</li> <li>• Plastic</li> <li>• Batteries and light bulbs</li> <li>• Clothes, textiles and shoes</li> <li>• Cooking oils</li> </ul> <p>Each waste stream can only be counted once.</p>	C, G, H
2.	Answers G or H can be selected even when Answer C has already been selected. However, the neighbourhood recycling facilities must cover different residential waste streams to those available at the curb side.	C, G, H
3.	<p>Curb side recycling containers should be the minimum size recommended by the appropriate local authority</p> <p>Or</p> <p>Where there are no recommendations from the local authority, 100L of volume for a single bedroom and a further 70L for each additional bedroom</p>	C
4.	Communal waste segregation containers shall:	C, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) meet the requirements of 'Operational waste – Waste stream segregation' (see Methodology).</li> <li>b) be grouped together in the operational waste management facility.</li> <li>c) be of a design appropriate for the waste stream they hold and as a minimum be closable, non-absorbent, leakproof and durable to prevent contaminated run off or waste escaping.</li> <li>d) be clearly labelled to show what waste shall be deposited in each container to assist users.</li> </ul>	
5.	<p>The communal waste management area or facility shall:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) be central and dedicated to the purpose.</li> <li>b) be clearly labelled to assist users.</li> <li>c) be accessible to residents or facilities operators for the deposit of waste, and appropriate for preparing the containers for collection by waste management contractors. Consideration should be given to access by those with disabilities.</li> <li>d) have adequate lighting, ventilation and sound insulation to allow for safe use with minimal disturbance to the asset occupants and surrounding residents during operating hours.</li> <li>e) have vehicular gate heights and widths, manoeuvring and loading spaces sized to ensure ease of access for vehicle collections, where situated and accessed for collection internally,</li> <li>f) have an adjacent water outlet for cleaning and hygiene purposes, where organic waste is stored for collection or on-site composting</li> </ul>	C, D
6.	<p>The size of the operational waste management facility shall meet the requirements of 'Operational waste – Space requirement' (see methodology).</p>	C, D
7.	<p>The construction waste management space shall:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) be as criteria 5d and 5e above.</li> <li>b) be accessible for the deposit of waste by constructors and collections by waste management contractors (that may be different from the operational waste collections).</li> <li>c) be separate from the operational waste management facility.</li> <li>d) have a range of containers available for segregating waste streams appropriate for likely waste classifications and quantities.</li> <li>e) be of a size that can contain reasonable estimates of the likely waste classifications and quantities. If available, the data recorded (see issue Rsc 06 Optimising resource use, reuse and recycling), shall be used to inform estimates.</li> <li>f) be a permanent space, or a space normally used for another function that will be readily converted to fulfil this function during</li> </ul>	L

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	construction works (e.g. car parking spaces where a temporary enclosure can be erected).	
8.	Exemplary level credits: Answer L can only be selected if options C, G or H have been selected.	L

## Methodology

### Operational waste – Space requirement

The facility size shall be determined as follows:

- a) If the asset has been occupied during the previous 3 years and data has been recorded (see issue Rsc 06 Optimising resource use, reuse and recycling), the quantity of storage space provided shall be demonstrated as sufficient by reference to the data recorded on waste generated.
- b) If no data is available, use the following guide:
  - i. At least 2m<sup>2</sup> per 1000m<sup>2</sup> of net floor area for assets < 5000m<sup>2</sup>
  - ii. A minimum of 10m<sup>2</sup> for assets ≥ 5000m<sup>2</sup>
  - iii. An additional 2m<sup>2</sup> per 1000m<sup>2</sup> of net floor area where catering is provided (with an additional minimum of 10m<sup>2</sup> for assets ≥ 5000m<sup>2</sup>)

The net floor area should be rounded up to the nearest 1000m<sup>2</sup>.

- c) The space for recyclable waste must be in addition to areas and facilities provided for dealing with non-recyclable waste and other waste management facilities, e.g. compactors, balers and composters.

### Operational waste – Waste stream segregation

The waste streams to segregate and range, size and number of containers shall be based on:

- a) The waste likely to be generated, determined by
  - i. If the asset has been occupied during the previous 3 years and data has been recorded (see issue Rsc 06 Optimising resource use, reuse and recycling), the data recorded on waste generated.
  - ii. If no data is available, estimates according to the type of asset and operations occurring. Estimates on occupant waste shall be agreed with the occupant(s).
- b) Availability, collection frequency, and utilisation of waste collection services available in the local area for the collection and proper recycling of the waste likely to be generated.
- c) If different waste streams are stored or collected in the same container (commingled), the waste collector shall demonstrate that they separate commingled waste into the identified waste streams.
- d) A minimum of 3 waste streams are segregated.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	If waste is commingled, records from the waste collector that commingled waste is separated in the waste streams as identified.

## Definitions

### Accessible space:

Accessible space is typically within 20m of an entrance to the asset. Depending on the size of the asset, site restrictions or tenancy arrangements, it may not be possible for the facilities to be within 20m of an entrance to an asset. In such circumstances, judgement on whether the space is 'accessible' to the occupants and vehicle collection must be made.

### Bulky waste:

Waste types that are too large to be accepted by regular waste collection. For example, discarded furniture and large appliances

### Commingled recycling:

Commingled recycling allows for waste that can be recycled to be disposed of in one receptacle. Recyclable materials including glass, plastics, cardboard, paper, metals and aluminium cans and containers are examples of materials that are often co-mingled.



## Asset Performance: Rsc 03 Resources inventory



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To enable asset owners to recognise, maintain and benefit from the value of resources in the asset. To increase the reuse and recycling of resources and reduce the use of virgin materials.

### Question

Has a resources inventory been completed, or reviewed, in the last 5 years?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, simple resources inventory
4	D.	Yes, extended resources inventory

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Answer option D or E has been selected in Rsc 01 Condition survey and all relevant Assessment Criteria have been met. (Or the asset is less than 5 years old and Rsc 01 Condition survey has been filtered out of the assessment.)	C, D
2.	The resources inventory shall be produced by a competent person who: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>meets the competent person criteria in Rsc 01 Condition survey</li> <li>has appropriate knowledge of circular economy principles in relation to maintaining and realising the value of resources</li> </ol>	C, D
3.	If Rsc 01 Condition survey has been answered D or E, the resources inventory shall be fully coordinated with the condition survey.	C, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
4.	<p>The resources inventory is either an electronic schedule (e.g. a spreadsheet) or held within a building information model (BIM) of the asset (that is useable by the organisation managing the asset).</p> <p><b>Simple resources inventory</b></p> <p>A simple resources inventory shall include the following information for each significant resource in the asset:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) functional classification (e.g. carpet, window) according to a nationally recognised classification system (e.g. Uniclass in the UK)</li> <li>b) the constituent materials (e.g. mild steel, mineral wool) according to a nationally recognised classification system (e.g. Uniclass in the UK)</li> <li>c) the location in the asset</li> <li>d) estimated quantity in the asset in a suitable unit (e.g. m<sup>3</sup>, kg, number of)</li> </ul> <p><b>Extended resources inventory</b></p> <p>In addition to the items listed above for a simple resources inventory, an extended resources inventory shall include the following information for each significant resource in the asset:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e) guidance on current financial value</li> <li>f) guidance on maintaining value through planned maintenance, repair, replacement (of constituent components), refurbishment works</li> <li>g) guidance on maintaining value during disassembly and demolition works during, or at the end of, the asset's life (depending on the estimated remaining service life of the resource and the estimated remaining life of the asset)</li> <li>h) guidance on maximising financial income, or avoiding costs, through reuse or recycling opportunities, following disassembly and demolition works, including how these may develop in the future.</li> </ul>	C, D

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
3, 4	A copy of the resources inventory, with the relevant sections identified according to each question answer and criterion.

## Definitions

### Circular economy principles:

Principles relevant to construction that have been derived from circular economy theory. The following resources include examples of principles that may be applied:

- British Standards Institution (2017) BS 8001:2017 Framework for implementing the principles of the circular economy in organisations – Guide
- Ellen MacArthur Foundation (2017) *Introduction to the circular ecology – Circular economy booklet*. Available from:  
[https://www.ellenmacarthurfoundation.org/assets/downloads/sme/19\\_CE100-SME-booklet\\_print.pdf](https://www.ellenmacarthurfoundation.org/assets/downloads/sme/19_CE100-SME-booklet_print.pdf)
- Ellen MacArthur Foundation [online] *What is a circular economy?* Available from:  
<https://www.ellenmacarthurfoundation.org/circular-economy/concept>
- SPP Regions (2017) *Circular Procurement – Best Practice Report*. Available from:  
<http://www.sppregions.eu/resources/publications/>
- UKGBC (2019) Circular economy guidance for construction clients: How to practically apply circular economy principles at the project brief stage. Available from:  
<https://www.ukgbc.org/ukgbc-work/circular-economy-guidance-for-construction-clients-how-to-practically-apply-circular-economy-principles-at-the-project-brief-stage/>

### Resource in the asset:

A construction product, fitting or item of furniture. Minor fixings (brackets, nails, screws etc.), adhesives, and seals may be excluded.



## Asset Performance: Rsc 04 Future adaptation



Credits

No Minimum Standard

### Applicability: n/a

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.



## Asset Performance: Resilience



### Summary

This category considers an asset's exposure to physical risks (including those related to climate change), climate-related transitional and social risks and opportunities, local watercourse pollution, excess material damage, and physical security. This encourages the pro-active management of these risks to minimise their impact and to identify opportunities to enhance resilience of the asset and the community in which it sits to ensure rapid recovery. While this category focuses on hazard preparedness and response, aspects beyond this focus that contribute to and support the broader resilience of the asset and communities it impacts can be found in each of the categories in this standard.

### Context

#### Flood risk

Goal 11 of the United Nations' SDGs focuses on 'sustainable cities and communities', targeting to 'significantly reduce the number of deaths and the number of people affected and substantially decrease the direct economic losses relative to global gross domestic product caused by disasters, including water-related disasters' by 2030. Many homes and Apartment buildings are at a significant risk of flooding, i.e. they have a greater than 1 in 75 chance each year of being flooded. Apart from the initial effects of being flooded, once flood water has been drained, significant resources (time and cost) are required to clean, refit and re-open buildings for operation.

This cause major disruption to people's lives and can be costly, time-consuming, and stressful to manage. Understanding the risk of flooding that an asset is exposed to is the first step to managing this risk

#### Natural hazards

All buildings are exposed to a range of natural hazards. These can damage the assets and impact on the residents significantly. By understanding hazards that a building is exposed to, good management practice can be implemented to minimise impacts, ensure that the asset quickly recovers to 'business as usual'.

#### Durability

Exposed elements of a building or landscaping are at risk of damage through impact, general dilapidation and wear and tear. This can result in significant and unnecessary materials use and waste generation across the life of a building. This can be minimised by risk areas being identified and designed out, and suitable protection measures being provided.

#### Security

Feelings of safety and security are essential to healthy and productive asset occupants. Freedom from crime and the fear of crime has a major impact on quality of life, and therefore affects the well-being of building occupants. At a basic level, providing incident alarms gives comfort and some resilience to these occurrences for building users.

## Issues

<b>Rsl 01</b>	<b>Flood risk assessment</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
		<b>+ 1 Exemplary</b>

**Aim:**

To encourage the identification of flood risk and implement mitigation measures where required.

**Value:**

Encourages understanding of the flood risk of the asset.

Allows appropriate mitigation measures to be implemented, protecting both the physical asset, occupants.

<b>Rsl 02</b>	<b>Surface water run-off impact mitigation</b>	<b>2 credits</b>
---------------	--	------------------

**Aim:**

To avoid, reduce and delay the discharge of rainfall to public sewers and watercourses, thereby minimising the risk and impact of localised flooding on-site and off-site.

**Value:**

Reduces risk of flooding downstream and prevents issues with standing water on-site.

<b>Rsl 03</b>	<b>Natural hazard risk assessment</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
---------------	---------------------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To encourage the identification of the risks from natural hazards and build capacity to recover quickly following a damaging event.

**Value:**

Encourages understanding of the risk to the asset from natural hazards.

Allows appropriate mitigation measures to be implemented, protecting both the physical asset, occupants.

<b>Rsl 04</b>	<b>Durable and resilient features</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
---------------	---------------------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To minimise the frequency of replacing exposed elements of the building and landscape, improving material optimisation.

**Value:**

Avoids damage to building elements reduces the time and cost of building maintenance.

Maintains and enhances asset value whilst protecting occupants.

**Rsl 05     Alarm systems****4 credits****Aim:**

To ensure the asset is equipped with appropriate alarm systems to prevent damage to the asset or property within the asset.

**Value:**

Protects owners and building users from sustaining losses.



## Asset Performance: Rsl 01 Flood risk assessment



Credits

Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To encourage the identification of flood risk and implement mitigation measures where required.

### Question

If a flood risk assessment (FRA) has been carried out, what was its scope and which flood risk level was assigned to the asset?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer from B, C, E & F, if answer B or C has been selected, answer D is also available. Answer G is in addition to all other answers
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	FRA not carried out.
1	C.	FRA scope only includes Fluvial (rivers) and Tidal (sea) sources, and flood risk from these sources is Medium or High
2	D.	FRA scope includes all sources, and flood risk is Medium or High
+2	E.	Flood mitigation measures were required and have been implemented
3	F.	FRA scope only includes Fluvial (rivers) and Tidal (sea) sources, and flood risk from these sources is Zero or Low
4	G.	FRA scope included all sources and flood risk is Zero or Low
Exemplary	H.	The calculations of flood risk in the FRA contain an allowance for climate change for all sources of flooding

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Flooding from all sources must take into account: a) Fluvial (rivers)	D, G and H

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b) Tidal (sea)</li> <li>c) Surface water: sheet run-off from adjacent land (urban or rural)</li> <li>d) Groundwater: most common in low-lying areas underlain by permeable rock (aquifers)</li> <li>e) Sewers: combined, foul or surface water sewers</li> <li>f) Reservoirs, canals and other artificial sources</li> <li>g) A nearby functional flood plain</li> </ul>	
2.	<p>Flood risk maps produced by a Local or National Authority can form the basis of a Flood Risk Assessment but will not be sufficient on its own to demonstrate compliance. Assessors should verify which sources of flooding the flood risk maps cover when awarding credits.</p>	C, D, F - H
3.	<p>Flood Risk Assessments need to be undertaken by a relevant organisation/authority or a competent individual. FRA must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) State which sources of flooding they cover</li> <li>b) Have been written or reviewed in the last 5 years</li> <li>c) Have the appropriate level of detail. This will depend on the size of the site and the arrangement of buildings on that site. For a small site (&lt;2,000m<sup>2</sup>) with a relatively simple arrangement of buildings this might consist of a brief report. For larger sites (&gt;10,000m<sup>2</sup>) with a higher density of buildings a more detailed assessment would be appropriate</li> <li>d) Include flood mitigation measures, if the flood risk is Medium or High.</li> </ul>	C - G
4.	It must be demonstrated that recommendations have been implemented.	E
5.	<p>Exemplary level credit:  Answer option H can be select independently of which other answer option has been selected.  An allowance for climate change should be based on a Medium or High Emissions Scenario from a robust Climate Model. This should cover a reasonable time period for the building, such as the 2050s or beyond.</p>	H

## Checklists and Tables

### No National definitions of Flood Risk

In countries that do not have a definition of flood risk the following definitions can be used.

Table 22: Flood risk zones

	<b>Fluvial (rivers)</b>	<b>Tidal (sea)</b>
Low annual probability of flooding	Less than 1 in 1000 chance of flooding (< 0.1%)	Less than 1 in 1000 chance of flooding (< 0.1%)
Medium annual probability of flooding	Between 1 in 100 and 1 in 1000 chance of flooding (1%–0.1%)	Between 1 in 200 and 1 in 1000 chance of sea flooding (0.5%–0.1%)
High annual probability of flooding	1 in 100 or greater chance of river flooding (>1%)	1 in 200 or greater chance of flooding from the sea (>0.5%)

## Evidence

<b>Criteria</b>	<b>Evidence requirement</b>
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1, 2	Flood risk maps showing the following: - <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Location of the building</li> <li>b) Flood risk levels</li> <li>c) Sources of flooding covered</li> </ul>
3	FRA from relevant body or competent individual, including evidence of their competence.
4	Photographic or documentary evidence that the mitigation measures have been implemented.
5	Highlighted sections of the FRA showing the Emissions Scenario, Climate Model used and timeframe for the allowance for climate change.

## Definitions

### Competent individual:

An individual (or individuals) with qualifications and experience relevant to assessing flood risk, designing flood prevention measures and calculations. Where complex flooding calculations and prevention measures are required, this must be a specialist hydrological engineer.

### Functional flood plain:

A zone that comprises land where water has to flow or be stored in times of flood.



## Asset Performance: Rsl 02 Surface water run-off impact mitigation



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To avoid, reduce and delay the discharge of rainfall to public sewers and watercourses, thereby minimising the risk and impact of localised flooding on-site and off-site.

### Question

Are there measures in place to minimise the rate of surface water runoff from the site?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Examples of appropriate measures to minimise surface water runoff include (but are not limited to): <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sustainable Drainage Systems (SuDS)</li> <li>Permeable surfaces</li> <li>Infiltration trenches</li> <li>Green or Blue roofs</li> <li>Rainwater tanks</li> </ol>	C
2.	Measures should, either individually or in combination, produce a reasonable reduction in the rate of surface water runoff.	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1, 2	Annotated photographic evidence of on-site measures.

## Definitions

### Green Roof:

A green roof is a roof that is partially or completely covered with vegetation and soil or another growing medium, situated on top of a waterproof membrane. These systems can be either intensive or extensive.

- a) Intensive Green roof systems have a deep growing medium, which allow the establishment of trees and shrubs. The depth of the growing medium requires extra loading requirements within the holding structure and requires a complex irrigation system for maintenance.
- b) Extensive green roof systems have a thin growing medium and require minimal maintenance, and in general do not require irrigation.

### Blue roof:

A roof construction that is designed to store water. This can include open water surfaces, storage within or beneath a porous media or modular surface or below a raised decking surface or cover.



## Asset Performance: Rsl 03 Natural hazard risk assessment



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To encourage the identification of the risks from natural hazards and build capacity to recover quickly following a damaging event.

### Question

Has a risk assessment been carried out to understand an asset's exposure to current Natural Hazards?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, and emergency plans have been developed for all relevant Natural Hazards
4	D.	The asset is in an area where no risks exist

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	A natural hazard risk assessment needs to be undertaken by a relevant organisation / authority or a competent individual.	C
2.	The emergency plan includes a coherent emergency strategy for all relevant natural hazards for the time period specified.	C
3.	Responsibility for emergency plans have been delegated to relevant individuals within the organisation at the asset.	C
4.	The emergency plans are available to all residents with the asset.	C
5.	If there is no perceived threat from natural hazards this should be outlined in appropriate documentation from a relevant authority or expert.	D

### Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1,2, 3	A copy of the natural hazard risk policy/strategy including: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>evidence of the competence of the relevant organisation or individual</li> <li>the name the individuals that responsibility has been delegated to.</li> </ol>
4	Evidence of how the Emergency plans have been communicated to residents.
5	For assets that list no natural hazard risk exists: Documented confirmation from relevant agency/experts that the asset is in an area of no risk.

## Definitions

### Competent individual:

An individual (or individuals) with relevant technical and professional experience suitable to:

- a) Determine the potential for natural hazards in the region of the development
- b) Determine the likely impacts on the site, building and locality
- c) Subsequently identify appropriate mitigation measures This (or these) individual(s) should practice to and abide by a professional code of conduct or similar.

### Natural hazards:

Natural processes or phenomena occurring in the biosphere or crust that may constitute a damaging event. The list below is not intended to be exhaustive but provides an indication of the type of hazards that should be considered to meet the definition. Other natural hazards may be relevant under this issue. Relevance will be dependent on local geography, geology, hydrology and climate factors and the Assessor should be satisfied that appropriate local expertise has been sought by the client to identify these fully:

- a) Floods
- b) Natural disasters of geological origin such as volcanic eruptions, earthquakes, landslides, tsunamis and tidal waves
- c) Natural disasters of climatic or meteorological origin such as droughts, avalanches, wave surges, and windstorms including cyclones, hurricanes, tornadoes, tropical storms, and typhoons
- d) Wildfires



## Asset Performance: Rsl 04 Durable and resilient features



Credits

No Minimum Standard

Applicability: All projects

### Aim

To minimise the frequency of replacing exposed elements of the building and landscape, improving material optimisation.

### Question

Does the asset contain features that protect exposed elements of the building and landscaping from damage from pedestrian traffic and external vehicular collision?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Protection from the effects of high pedestrian traffic in all main entrances, public areas and thoroughfares (corridors, lifts, stairs, doors etc.).
1	D.	Protection against any internal vehicular or trolley movement within 1m of the internal building fabric in all storage and delivery areas or corridors.
1	E.	Protection against, or prevention from, any potential vehicular collision where vehicular parking and manoeuvring occurs within 1m of the building façade for all car parking areas and within 2m for all delivery areas.
1	F.	Communal pathways which are easily accessible and dissuade building users from walking across delicate landscaped areas.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where assets aren't exposed to the risks described or there are no communal pathways these options can be filtered out of the assessment.	C - F

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	Examples of suitable durability and protection measures to public or common areas can include hard-wearing and easily washable floor finishes in heavily used circulation areas (i.e. main entrance, corridors and stairs)	C
3.	Examples of suitable durability and protection measures from vehicular parking and manoeuvring areas can include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bollards, barriers or raised kerbs</li> <li>• Robust external wall construction, up to 2m high</li> </ul>	E

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Photographic evidence or Assessor's site inspection report of asset protection infrastructure listed by the client.



## Asset Performance: Rsl 05 Alarm systems



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To ensure the asset is equipped with appropriate alarm systems to prevent damage to the asset or property within the asset.

### Question

Has the asset been fitted with fire and intruder alarm systems that are certified to a National or International standard?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Fire alarm systems
1	D.	The fire alarm system is connected to an Alarm receiving centre (ARC) that is operational 24 hours a day
1	E.	Intruder alarm systems
1	F.	The intruder alarm system connected to an Alarm receiving centre (ARC) that is operational 24 hours a day

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	The Alarm receiving centres should be staffed at all times	D, F
2.	Emergency response procedures should be in place with contractors and emergency services to enable the ARC monitoring function to be maintained whilst the emergency incident is investigated.	D, F

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	<p>Assets that have intruder alarms will require:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a) Documentation demonstrating intruder alarm system is approved to an appropriate National or International standard.</li><li>b) Photographic evidence, or confirmation in the Assessor's site inspection report, of the installed alarm systems.</li></ul>

## Definitions

### Alarm:

For both fire and intruder alarms, there must be an audible alarm when activated. This is to ensure that occupiers and guests are alerted.

## Additional information

### Security grading

A security grading is given to an alarm system by a certification body, such as UL or LPCB. A particular alarm grading might be needed in order to qualify for insurance coverage on a business premises. This will be dependent on the nature of the risk which is being protected.



## Asset Performance: Land Use and Ecology



### Summary

This category encourages a greater awareness of how the potential ecological value of an asset or site can be enhanced, and the impact that the operation of the asset can have on this ecological value. This enables long-term strategies to be established that will facilitate improvement in this regard.

### Context

The United Nations have an SDG related to 'life in land' (Goal 15), with the target to 'integrate ecosystem and biodiversity values into national and local planning and development processes'. The landscape and environmental features inside an asset boundary can have a significant impact on the broader environment and, if implemented and managed in an appropriate way, can have a positive impact on the ecological value of the site. It is therefore important to understand the existing value and conditions of a site and to maximise the ecological value of existing features and the surrounding area of a site.

## Issues

Lue 01	Planted area	4 credits
--------	--------------	-----------

**Aim:**

To measure and encourage planted areas within the asset footprint that support site's ecology and the health and wellbeing of occupants through access to green space.

**Value:**

Identifies the existing planted area that can potentially support biodiversity if it is managed or enhanced appropriately.

Helps to improve the health, well-being and potential productivity of occupants through the provision and increased proximity to elements of the natural environment.

Lue 02	Ecological features of planted area	2 credits
+ 1 Exemplary		

**Aim:**

To measure and recognise and evaluate ecological features that have been installed in the planted areas of the asset's footprint in order to improve the ecological value of the site.

**Value:**

Raises awareness of ecological features on a site and increase the overall biodiversity on the site.

Provides habitat corridors for local native species.

Contributes to the restoration and continued growth of biodiversity in the area.



## Asset Performance: Lue 01 Planted area



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To measure and encourage planted areas within the asset's footprint that enhance the asset's site ecology.

### Question

What is the area of the asset's footprint and what percentage has been planted?

Credits	Answer	Enter area (m <sup>2</sup> )	Enter percentage (%)
1	A.	Communal site area	≥5% to ≤40%
2	B.	Communal site area	>40%
1	C.	Private site area	≥5% to ≤40%
2	D.	Private site area	>40%

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where either Communal or Private outdoor spaces are not present, the associated credits can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	Planted area can contain or be a mix of horizontal and vertical planting.	All
3.	Vertical habitats or green walls can be: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Free standing or part of the building, as long as these are located within the asset's footprint.</li> <li>Partially or completely covered with vegetation and, in some cases, soil or an inorganic growing medium.</li> <li>Green walls can only be considered if they meet the definition (see below) and are 'plug planted'. Green walls consisting of climbing plants where the wall is simply acting as a support for the plants cannot be considered</li> </ol>	All

## Methodology

### Calculating the percentage of planted area (%) on the site:

#### For buildings only:

The asset is a building on its own without any associated site attached (for example, a multi- family residential tower in a city centre). In this case, the asset footprint can be considered to be the area of the asset/ building only (typically the ground floor area).

#### For buildings located on a site:

The asset footprint can be taken as the site on which the building is situated. The boundary of the site must be drawn when either:

- Responsibility of management or ownership of the site changes; **OR**
- If a site includes multiple assets and there is a clear demarcation of the area associated with each asset, then this must be considered to be the site boundary for the asset footprint.

### Calculating the percentage of planted area (%) on the site:

$$\frac{\text{Total External planted area (m}^2\text{)}}{\text{Asset footprint (m}^2\text{)}} \times 100$$

### Calculating the percentage of planted area (%) if a vertical wall has been installed:

$$\frac{\text{Total external planted area (m}^2\text{)} + \text{Total planted vertical area (m}^2\text{)}}{\text{Asset footprint (m}^2\text{)}} \times 100$$

NB: This value can equate to more than 100% if the sum of the area of the vertical faces are more than the total asset footprint.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
2, 3	Visual inspection of ecological features.
2, 3	Photographic evidence of installed ecological features.
2, 3	Written evidence that the calculation has been carried out.

## Definitions

### **Green Roof:**

A green roof is a roof that is partially or completely covered with vegetation and soil or another growing medium, situated on top of a waterproof membrane. These systems can be either intensive or extensive.

- a) Intensive Green roof systems have a deep growing medium, which allow the establishment of trees and shrubs. The depth of the growing medium requires extra loading requirements within the holding structure and requires a complex irrigation system for maintenance.
- b) Extensive green roof systems have a thin growing medium and require minimal maintenance, and in general do not require irrigation.

### **Green Walls:**

An external wall which is fully or partially covered with vegetation. These systems usually consist of a growing medium (soil, water or an inorganic substrate), with an integrated water delivery system where necessary given the climate and local weather. The structure should be plug planted and attached to the external wall/walls of an asset. They are also known as living walls, green facades or vertical gardens.



## Asset Performance: Lue 02 Ecological features of planted area



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To measure and recognise and evaluate ecological features that have been installed in the planted areas of the asset's footprint in order to improve the ecological value of the site.

### Question

What ecological features have been planted or installed in the planted areas of the asset's footprint?

Credits	Answer	Select one applicable answer A-D, also select answer E if applicable.
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	None
1	C.	2 or more ecological features are present
2	D.	All the ecological features are present
Exemplary	E.	Habitat that significantly supports local native species

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>Ecological features are listed below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Planters (containing living plants) outside</li> <li>• Traditional planted areas, such as gardens, planting in car parks and planting around the asset</li> <li>• Other planted areas, such as green roofs and green walls</li> <li>• Features to assist local fauna</li> </ul>	C, D
2.	<p>Native floral species or those with a known attraction or benefit to local wildlife can be considered for the purpose of enhancing the ecological value</p>	C - E

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
3.	<p>Features to assist local fauna include (but are not limited to):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Bird boxes</li> <li>b) Bat boxes</li> <li>c) Insect boxes</li> <li>d) Wildlife bricks (e.g. bees or bats)</li> </ul> <p>Assessors must verify features are installed and maintained correctly, a reasonable number of features have been installed, and local or regional guidance has been followed. The features must be installed in line with the manufacturers guidance and ecological advice from a suitably qualified ecologist (SQE).</p>	C, D
4.	Planted areas must be of a viable size to support the flora and fauna within them and cannot be bare soil.	C, D
5.	<p>Exemplary level credit:</p> <p>Answer option E can be selected independently of which other answer option has been selected.</p> <p>Habitat which significantly supports local species must be maintained and installed in line with local guidance and advice from a relevant organisation/authority for the feature (e.g. local, national or international wildlife charities). The Habitat will aim to enhance the ecology of the site in more ways than one, examples of this include wildlife pond, wildflower meadow or hedgerow.</p>	E

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Visual inspection of ecological features

## Definitions

### Suitably qualified ecologist (SQE):

An individual achieving all the following items can be considered to be "suitably qualified" for the purposes of a BREEAM In-Use International assessment:

- a) Holds a degree or equivalent qualification in ecology or in a related subject comprising a significant ecology component.
- b) Is a practising ecologist, with a minimum of three years relevant experience (within the last five years). Such experience must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding of factors affecting ecology in relation to construction and the built environment; including, acting in an advisory capacity

to provide recommendations for ecological protection, enhancement and mitigation measures. The relevant experience must relate to the country that the assessment is being carried out in.

## Additional information

### Ecological Features:

- Where features are installed they must be maintained correctly, appropriate for the particular asset being assessed, in line with manufacturer's guidance and ecological advice from an SQE or relevant organisation/authority for the feature. For example, in the UK this may be available from RSPB, Bat Conservation Trust or Buglife, for the bird, bat or insect boxes, respectively. Guidance from equivalent organisations for different countries should be referred to. If this is not available for the particular country being assessed, organisations that covers a nearby country with similar context for wildlife.
- Where available, local or regional guidance has been followed to ensure features and habitats are appropriate for local priorities for biodiversity. For example, where the local biodiversity action plan suggests that Swifts or a particular species of bat are present in the area and are a local priority, these should be considered before selecting anything not specifically mentioned in the local guidance.
- A reasonable quantity of features have been installed for the asset being assessed to make the most of these features being installed in line with local guidance, SQE guidance or relevant organisation e.g. local wildlife trust) and using the Assessor's discretion. For example, one bird box for a huge development would not be acceptable if there was scope to install more elsewhere on the asset, which could add ecological value.



## Asset Performance: Pollution



### Summary

This category addresses the prevention and control of pollution associated with an asset location and use. This facilitates a reduction in impact on surrounding communities and environment, arising from flooding and emissions to air, land and water.

### Context

#### Local air quality

Poor air quality has a detrimental effect on people and other living things. Poorer communities are often disproportionately impacted by pollutants, which research has shown to have lifelong consequences on health and welfare. Gases such as nitrous oxides ( $\text{NO}_x$ ) can react with other gases and environmental factors, including sunlight, to create substances that have a major impact on health and wellbeing. These substances can be highly detrimental to human health. They can be carcinogenic, have respiratory impacts (resulting in asthma and other bronchial complaints), have a sensitising effect for allergy sufferers and increase instances of heart disease. The United Nations have made 'good health and well-being' one of its SDGs, with an aim to 'substantially reduce the number of deaths and illnesses from hazardous chemicals and air, water and soil pollution and contamination' by 2030. Under this issue, BREEAM seeks to limit emissions from developments in operation that have an impact on local air quality.

#### Refrigerants

The typical refrigerants used in building cooling systems are major greenhouse gases that are many times more potent than carbon dioxide in their contribution to global warming and climate change. Although, released in much smaller quantities they are, nevertheless, a significant contributor to increasing global temperatures. As such, they are the focus of increasingly strict regulatory controls internationally. Worldwide agreements (such as the 1992 United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC)) and its extension, the Kyoto Protocol, commits signatories to reducing greenhouse gas emissions and banning the most damaging gases. The agreements seek to shift use to low impact refrigerants over time and so provide a timescale for the phasing out of more potent refrigerants. Because the use of the gases is so prolific actions taken to limit their use are vital.

The use of CFCs and HCFCs as refrigerants has been phased out under the Montreal Protocol, resulting in these substances no longer being used as refrigerants in all new build and most existing situations. The industry's favoured replacements are currently HFCs which, while less damaging to the ozone layer, have 1,000 to 9,000 times greater capacity to warm the atmosphere than carbon dioxide. Through the Kigali amendment to the Montreal Protocol, the world will phase out HFCs starting with high-income countries in 2019, then some low-income countries in 2024 and other signatories in 2028. However, the use of HFCs will continue to grow significantly before this phase out is completed. With 90 percent of refrigerant emissions happening at the end of life, the effective disposal of the refrigerants in use is critical.

BREEAM supports this agenda and stimulates a more rapid change market transformation by creating market value for assets with reduced impact refrigerants by limiting the volume or weight of gases used, their potential impact, and for specifying systems which detect and control leakage of gas to the atmosphere.

Refrigerant leaks impact both the environment and financial performance of an asset, increasing the running time of the equipment and potentially damaging components of the system. Whilst many countries have regulatory systems in place that require leak testing and repair for systems of a certain size during regular maintenance, knowing as soon as possible when a leak has occurred is key to minimising the environmental impacts, managing operating costs and maximising the life cycle of the installed equipment.

## Issues

**Pol 01 Minimising watercourse pollution****2 credits****Aim:**

To reduce the risk of polluting natural watercourses through contaminated surface run-off entering drainage systems.

**Value:**

Reduces the risk of pollution to local watercourses and potential breaches of environmental law.

Reduces the risk of blocked drains both on-site and in the wider sewerage system.

**Pol 02 Chemical storage****2 credits****Aim:**

To reduce the impact of a chemical leak or spill by containing the substance and minimising impact on other areas of the building.

**Value:**

Prevents damage to local watercourses and potential breaches of environmental law in the event of a chemical spill.

Minimises the risk to people on-site.

**Pol 03 Local air quality****4 credits****Aim:**

To reduce local air pollution by using no or low emission heating and hot water systems in the asset.

**Value:**

Reduces the impact on local air quality and human health.

Reduces the cost of regulatory compliance by encouraging on-going and proactive maintenance.

**Pol 04 Global warming potential of refrigerants****4 credits****Aim:**

To encourage the use of refrigerants with a low global warming potential (GWP) in refrigerant equipment.

**Value:**

Reduces the overall contribution to climate change.

Reduces the cost of regulatory compliance by encouraging on-going and proactive maintenance.

**Pol 05    Refrigerant leak detection systems****4 credits****Aim:**

To reduce the level of greenhouse gas emissions related to the leakage of refrigerants.

**Value:**

Ensures that systems are operating efficiently and delivering the cooling they were designed for.

Increases system resilience and market value by using low impact refrigerants.



## Asset Performance: Pol 01 Minimising watercourse pollution



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To reduce the risk of polluting natural watercourses through contaminated surface run-off entering drainage systems.

### Question

Are there light-liquid separators fitted within the drainage system to vehicular areas?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, light-liquid interceptors are installed within the drainage system where potential sources of pollution exist

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p><b>Filtering</b></p> <p>Where the asset does not require light liquid separators, the associated credits can be filtered out of the assessment.</p> <p>Assessor will need to confirm that there are no areas at risk of pollution.</p>	C
2.	<p>External hard standing areas that serve the asset need to be assessed. Those that present a risk of watercourse pollution, and require light-liquid/oil separators, include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Vehicle manoeuvring areas</li> <li>b) Car parks</li> <li>c) Communal waste disposal facilities</li> <li>d) Delivery and storage facilities</li> <li>e) Plant areas</li> </ul>	C

## Specific notes

Asset type specific	
1.	<p><b>Indoor parking</b></p> <p>If the design team can demonstrate that there will be no water run-off from indoor parking the credit can be awarded by default. This is because there would be a greatly reduced possibility of water course pollution from hydrocarbons. Such evidence would need to demonstrate that water courses will be protected from hydrocarbons, both from spillage from vehicles and water ingress from outside.</p>

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
2	Photographic evidence of separator equipment installed on-site.
2	Site plans detailing location of separators.
2	Site plans or the Assessor's site inspection report confirming that the site has no areas in the development with the potential to pollute watercourses.

## Definitions

### Light-liquid/oil separators:

A part of a surface water drainage system, into which potentially contaminated wastewater flows. Light, free-floating liquids (such as oil) are separated from the wastewater by means of gravity or coalescence, and retained.

### Watercourses:

A term that includes rivers, streams, ditches, drains, culverts, dykes, sluices, sewers and passages through which water flows.



## Asset Performance: Pol 02 Chemical storage



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To reduce the impact of a chemical leak or spill by containing the substance and minimising impact on other areas of the building.

### Question

Are all hazardous chemicals stored in areas with adequate containment to deal with  $\geq 110\%$  of the chemicals stored?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there are no hazardous chemicals stored in the asset, this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	C
2.	Containment for spillage can come in the form of one mitigation measure or the combination of several. Mitigation measures can include, (but are not limited to): <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Double skin tanks</li> <li>Drip trays</li> <li>Non-permeable membranes in the room where tanks are located</li> <li>Bunding</li> </ol>	C
3.	The scope of this issue includes all hazardous chemicals stored for use in communal areas of the building.	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
2	Photographic evidence of chemical storage.
2	Confirmation that facilities are appropriate to the area they serve

## Definitions

### Hazardous chemicals:

Chemicals with properties that make it dangerous or capable of having a harmful effect on human health or the environment. An example of a list of materials/waste that is defined by law as being hazardous can be found in the Hazardous Waste List (HWL) of the European Waste Catalogue (EWC).



## Asset Performance: Pol 03 Local air quality



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To reduce local air pollution by using no or low emission heating and hot water systems in the asset.

### Question

Do the asset's heating and hot water systems generate local emissions of nitrogen oxides, particulate matter or volatile organic compounds?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	Yes, emissions from combustion appliance(s) exceed the limits in Table 23
1	C.	Yes, emissions from biomass or solid fuel combustion appliance(s) comply with the limits in Table 23
2	D.	Yes, emissions from oil combustion appliance(s) comply with the limits in Table 23
3	E.	Yes, emissions from gas combustion appliance(s) comply with the limits in Table 23
4	F.	No, all heating and hot water is supplied by non-combustion system(s), e.g. powered by electricity

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where the asset is connected to a district heating system that is outside the control of the building owner or manager, this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	All

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	Credits are awarded where emissions from the asset's combustion appliance(s), that provide space heating and domestic hot water to the asset, do not exceed the limits set in Table 23.	B - E
3.	<p>The emission limits in Table 23 use the following units of measurement:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nitrogen oxides (NO<sub>x</sub>) measured in mg/kWh fuel input based on Gross Calorific Value (GCV) for gas or oil appliances.</li> <li>• Particulate matter and volatile organic compounds (VOC) for all solid fuel or biomass boilers measured in mg/m<sup>3</sup> 10% O<sub>2</sub> dry basis.</li> <li>• Particulate matter and VOC for all solid fuel or biomass local heaters measured in mg/m<sup>3</sup> 13% O<sub>2</sub> dry basis.</li> </ul> <p>To demonstrate compliance with the emission limits, emission measurement information must be provided by the appliance(s) manufacturer(s). Where emission information is not available in these units of measurement, the correct information must be obtained from the appliance manufacturer.</p>	B - E
4.	Where multiple appliances are installed, credits are awarded based on the worst performing appliance. This applies whether the systems use the same fuel or different fuels. E.g. a building uses a biomass boiler for heating and a gas-fuelled boiler for hot water. If both boilers meet the emission levels in Table 23 one credit can be awarded, because assessment is based on the biomass boiler.	B - F
5.	Back-up space or water heating appliances can be excluded from assessment. This is on the basis that these appliances will only be used in emergencies, so their impact will be limited.	B - F
6.	No credits may be awarded if any combustion appliances are not covered in Table 23 (e.g. open fronted heaters, or open flue heaters not fitted with non-return valves) or if any do not meet the emission levels stated in Table 23.	B - E
7.	Where a project is connected to a district heating system that is outside the control of the building owner or manager, the system does not need to be assessed. Where the building owner or manager does have control over the system, then it must be assessed.	B - F

## Checklists and Tables

Table 23: Emissions limit for combustion appliance

Appliance type	Fuel	Nitrogen oxides emissions	Particulate matter emissions	Volatile organic compound emissions
Boiler space heaters or combination heaters or water heaters	Gas	56 mg/kWh		
	Oil	120 mg/kWh		
	Biomass	200 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	40 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	20 mg/m <sup>3</sup>
	Solid fuel	350 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	40 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	20 mg/m <sup>3</sup>
Cogeneration space heaters using external combustion	Gas	70 mg/kWh		
	Oil	120 mg/kWh		
Cogeneration space heaters using internal combustion engine	Gas	240 mg/kWh		
	Oil	420 mg/kWh		
Heat pump space heaters or combination heaters or water heaters using external combustion	Gas	70 mg/kWh		
	Oil	120 mg/kWh		
Heat pump space heaters or combination heaters or water heaters using internal combustion engine	Gas	240 mg/kWh		
	Oil	420 mg/kWh		
Local space heaters	Gas	130 mg/kWh		
	Oil	130 mg/kWh		
Closed fronted local space heaters	Wood pellets	200 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	20 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	60 mg/m <sup>3</sup>
	Biomass	200 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	40 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	120 mg/m <sup>3</sup>
	Solid fuel	300 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	40 mg/m <sup>3</sup>	120 mg/m <sup>3</sup>

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Copy of manufacturer's details for installed appliance(s) and their emissions levels.
All	Photographic evidence of heating and hot water system(s).

## Additional information

### Emission limits

The emission limits and measurement units are based on the requirements of the European Union Ecodesign Directive (2009/125/EC) and its associated regulations for energy-related products. These set performance requirements for combustion-powered heating systems and requires manufacturers to publish the NO<sub>x</sub>, particulate matter and VOC emission levels for their products.



## Asset Performance: Pol 04 Global warming potential of refrigerants



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To encourage the use of refrigerants with a low global warming potential (GWP) in refrigerant equipment.

### Question

What refrigerants are used in the asset refrigeration equipment?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	Some refrigerants have a global warming potential of >10 (e.g. majority HFCs, HCFC, CFCs)
1	C.	50%, by kW cooling or heating capacity, of refrigerants have a global warming potential of ≤10 (e.g. Propane, Butane)
2	D.	All refrigerants have a global warming potential of ≤10 (e.g. Propane, Butane)
4	E.	All refrigerants have a global warming potential of ≤1 (e.g. Ammonia, Water, Carbon dioxide)

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where no refrigerants are used or only small hermetic systems (refrigerant charge in each system is ≤5kg) are installed in the asset, this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	This issue only applies to refrigerants used in equipment that is installed in the building, mainly for comfort cooling and heating (e.g. heat pumps).	All
3.	List of typical refrigerants with a low GWP can be found in Table 24 in the Checklist and Tables section of this issue.	All

## Checklists and Tables

Table 24: Common refrigerant types with a low GWP

R-Number	Chemical name	GWP 100-yr
R-30	Dichloromethane	9
R-170	Ethane	3
R-290	Propane	3
R-600	Butane	3
R-600a	Isobutane	3
R-717	Ammonia	0
R-718	Water	<1
R-729	Air (nitrogen, oxygen, argon)	0
R-744	Carbon dioxide	1
R-1150	Ethylene	3
R-1234yf	2,3,3,3-Tetrafluoropropene	<1
R-1270	Propylene	3

Sources: The United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) '2010 Report of the Refrigeration, Air-conditioning and Heat Pumps Technical Options Committee'

EN 378-1:2016 Refrigerating systems and heat pumps. Safety and environmental requirements. Basic requirements, definitions, classification and selection criteria

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 5th Assessment Report, Chapter 8, 'Anthropogenic and Natural Radiative Forcing', 2013

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Copy of manufacturer's information confirming the global warming potential of refrigerants used on-site.
All	Photographic evidence of refrigerant packaging/systems (if necessary).

Criteria	Evidence requirement
1	Statement from the building manager indicating that the asset does not contain any systems that contain refrigerants or confirmation that the total charge is ≤5kg in any systems that are present.

## Definitions

### GWP:

GWP is defined as the potential for global warming that a chemical has relative to 1 unit of carbon dioxide, the primary greenhouse gas. In determining the GWP of the refrigerant, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) methodology using a 100-year Integrated Time Horizon (or ITH) should be applied.

### Refrigerant:

A compound typically found in either a fluid or gaseous state that readily absorbs heat from the environment when combined with other components such as compressors and evaporators.

## Additional information

### Refrigerants

There are three main types of refrigerants:

**Hydrogenated Fluorocarbon Refrigerants (HFCs)** are made up of hydrogen, fluorine and carbon. They do not use a chlorine atom (which is used in most refrigerants), so they are known to be one of the least damaging to the Earth's ozone layer.

**Hydrogenated Chlorofluorocarbon Refrigerants (HCFCs)** are made up of hydrogen, chlorine, fluorine and carbon. These refrigerants contain minimal amounts of chlorine; they are not as detrimental to the environment as some other refrigerants.

**Chlorofluorocarbon Refrigerants (CFCs)** contain chlorine, fluorine and carbon. These refrigerants carry high amounts of chlorine, so they are known for being the most hazardous to the ozone layer.

Hydrocarbons and ammonia-based refrigerants have low or zero GWP. These are now widely available and are valid alternatives to HFCs in all buildings, providing health and safety issues are fully addressed. United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) hosts a HCFC Help Centre which contains information about the management and phase out of HCFCs and alternatives to HCFCs. Table 24 contains a list of common refrigerant types with a low GWP.



## Asset Performance: Pol 05 Refrigerant leak detection systems



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Apartments only

### Aim

To reduce the level of greenhouse gas emissions related to the leakage of refrigerants.

### Question

Is there an automated refrigerant leak detection system in place for all equipment that uses refrigerants?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No leak detection system in place
3	C.	Yes, warning alarm or lighting only
4	D.	Yes, warning alarm or lighting, automatic shutdown and pump down of refrigerants
4	E.	Only environmentally benign refrigerants (GWP ≤1, or solid-state) are used

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where no refrigerants are used or only small (refrigerant charge in each system is ≤5kg) hermetic systems are installed in the asset, this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	This issue only applies to refrigerants used in equipment that is installed in the building, mainly for comfort cooling and heating (e.g. heat pumps).	C - E
3.	A list of typical refrigerants with a low GWP can be found in Table 24: Common refrigerant types with a low GWP in the Checklist and Tables section of issue Pol 04 Global warming potential of refrigerants.	C - E

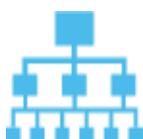
### Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Operation and maintenance manuals detailing installation of leak detection systems, or site inspection.
All	In case of environmentally benign refrigerants, manufacturer's confirmation of either minimal risk of leaks or minimal impact of leaks.
1	Statement from the building manager indicating that the asset does not contain any systems that contain refrigerants or confirmation that the total charge is ≤5kg in any systems that are present.

## Part 2 Management Performance

Table 25: Management Performance categories, credits available and environmental weightings

Environmental category	Credits available	Category weighting
Management	29	10%
Health and Well-being	23	16.5%
Energy	58	29.5%
Transport	0	0%
Water	14	8.5%
Resources	14	12%
Resilience	18	11%
Land Use and Ecology	10	8.5%
Pollution	8	4%
<b>Total</b>	<b>174</b>	<b>100%</b>
Exemplary (additional)	9	9%



## Management Performance: Management



### Summary

This category encourages sustainable management practices throughout the life cycle of the asset, ensuring that both technical and non-technical building operators and users have appropriate guidance on how they can help maximise sustainable performance. This enables clear targets to be put in place and provides feedback loops to ensure that processes and performance can be optimised.

### Context

New buildings are delivering healthier internal environments, more sustainably and efficiently than ever before. In turn, this raises the standards expected of existing buildings. Often, with limitations on what changes can be made whilst a building is still occupied, management practices become paramount in delivering the best performance that is possible from the existing building.

The aim of good building management should be to make sure that buildings performs in practice as well as, or better than, it was designed. This requires the building managers to first understand how the building is supposed to perform and then second, to ensure they have the policies and procedures in place to maintain this performance. Finally, it must be ensured that the performance being delivered meets the needs of the residents.

## Issues

**Man 01 Building/ Home user guide****2 credits****Aim:**

To recognise and encourage the provision of appropriate guidance for non-technical building users which enables them to access, understand and operate the building efficiently, and in a manner in keeping with the original design intent or revised strategy.

**Value:**

Allows building users to better understand the functionality of the building and how to operate it effectively.

Improves occupant comfort and helps to meet end-user requirements, consequently increasing occupant satisfaction and productivity.

**Man 02 Management engagement and feedback****8 credits****Aim:**

To facilitate structured feedback and awareness that enables management staff and residents to understand how to better operate the building.

**Value:**

Allows building managers to understand whether the building is meeting resident's needs.

Ensures that residents can feedback to building managers and assurance that any issues raised will be investigated and resolved as appropriate.

**Man 03 Maintenance policies and procedures****13 credits****Aim:**

To recognise and encourage best practice building maintenance practice.

**Value:**

Protecting the investment and the longer-term value of the asset through proactive maintenance policies and procedures.

Ensuring the knowledge of how to operate the building is accurate, effective and shared with those who need it for buildings to operate efficiently and as the building occupiers expect.

**Man 04 Environmental policies and procedures****6 credits  
+ 1 Exemplary****Aim:**

To recognise and encourage that environmental management provisions are in place.

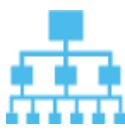
**Value:**

Ensures the commitment of the asset managers and operators to identifying and managing the environmental performance of the asset as well as documenting the actions required to minimize the environmental impact of building operations.

Encourages the enhancement of these commitments to include resilience-related information.

#### Man 05 Green Lease

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.



## Management Performance: Man 01 Building/ Home user guide



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the provision of appropriate guidance for non-technical building users which enables them to access, understand and operate the building efficiently, and in a manner in keeping with the original design intent or revised strategy.

### Question

Has relevant information from the building/home user guide been made accessible to all building users?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>A building/home user guide will provide easily accessible and understandable information relevant to the following stakeholders:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) The building's residents</li> <li>b) The non-technical facilities management team/building manager</li> </ul>	C
2.	<p>The building/home user guides shall be building-specific or site-specific guidance. The purpose of the guides is to help building users access, understand and operate the building efficiently and in accordance with the original design intent. The content of the guides is specific to the building type and end users, but should include information on the following topics, where applicable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Overview of the building and its environmental strategy, e.g. energy, water or waste efficiency policy or strategy, and how users should engage with and deliver the policy or strategy.</li> </ul>	C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b) Provision of, and access to, shared facilities.</li> <li>c) Provision of facilities, and features for users with disabilities or in need of additional support.</li> <li>d) Safety and emergency information or instructions.</li> <li>e) Building-related incident reporting and feedback arrangements.</li> <li>f) Provision of and access to transportation facilities, e.g. public transport, cyclist facilities, pedestrian routes etc.</li> <li>g) Provision of and access to local amenities.</li> <li>h) Links, references and relevant contact details.</li> <li>i) Building services overview and access to building occupant controls, e.g. where to find them, what they control, how to operate effectively and efficiently etc.</li> <li>j) Smoking policy</li> <li>k) Information on how the occupiers can protect and support ecology and biodiversity</li> </ul>	
3.	There is no requirement on the format the building/home user guide should take. However, the guide should be appropriately accessible for all building users with specific consideration given to people with disabilities.	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Copies of relevant sections of the Building/Home User Guide.
All	<p>Details how relevant information has been made accessible to building users, examples include (but not limited to):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) onboarding manual for facility managers</li> <li>b) copy of emails to (new) building users</li> <li>c) copy of information pack handed to new building users</li> </ul>



## Management Performance: Man 02 Management engagement and feedback



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To facilitate structured feedback and awareness that enables management staff and residents to understand how to better operate the building.

### Question

What processes are in place to ensure good communication between building managers, residents and neighbours?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers from A - E that apply, select either answer F or G
0	A.	Question not answered
1	B.	Formal communications between building management and residents
1	C.	At least annual meetings between building management and residents
1	D.	Residents are provided with information relating to environmental policies and performance of the asset
1	E.	Proactive engagement with neighbours and community, including a procedure that deals with any complaints relating to the asset and associated operations (e.g. noise, odour, and light).
2	F.	Occupant satisfaction surveys conducted by building management
4	G.	Occupant satisfaction surveys conducted by a third party

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Formal communications and meetings should be scheduled at appropriate intervals and locations, and when new procedures are adopted, or systems/controls installed.	B, C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	<p>Information can relate to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Health, Safety and Environmental policies</li> <li>b) Building Operating Procedures</li> <li>c) Asset environmental performance, e.g. Energy and Water consumption</li> <li>d) Public transport</li> <li>e) Environmental best practice topics</li> <li>f) Accessibility and equity</li> </ul>	D
3.	<p>Examples of community engagement or positive/proactive engagement with neighbours include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Online feedback opportunities</li> <li>• Surveys on and off-site with neighbours</li> <li>• Public engagement events or meetings</li> <li>• Participation in existing neighbourhood groups/activities</li> <li>• A standing community input committee</li> </ul>	E
4.	<p>The complaints procedure should detail how to deal with any complaints quickly and impartially.</p>	E
5.	<p>Occupant satisfaction surveys and feedback must be undertaken at least once every three years and additionally when major changes in facility planning, building services etc. have been undertaken.</p>	F, G
6.	<p>The survey process should be designed to cover, as a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Internal environmental conditions</li> <li>b) Internal environmental controls</li> <li>c) Internal fit-out and contents that are the responsibility of building management</li> <li>d) Communal facilities in the building</li> </ul> <p>Targets must be set for all topics for which building occupants have highlighted issues.</p> <p>Results and targets must be disseminated to all building users</p> <p>Progress on targets must be reviewed annually.</p>	F, G

## Evidence

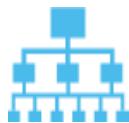
Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
3	Records demonstrating community engagement or positive/proactive engagement with neighbours.
4	Copy of relevant complaints procedure.
5, 6	A copy of the building occupant's satisfaction feedback forms and a sample of completed forms.
5, 6	Records of how information on target setting and procedure development has been communicated with building occupants.

## Definitions

### Formal communications:

These include, but are not limited to:

- a) Standard feedback forms (online or offline)
- b) Dedicated email address or other online communication
- c) Standard forms in areas accessible by all residents



## Management Performance: Man 03 Maintenance policies and procedures



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To recognise and encourage best practice building maintenance practice.

### Question

Which of the following maintenance policies and procedures are in place?

Credits	Answer	Select all the answers from B - F that apply, select either answer G or H
0	A.	Question not answered
1	B.	A full set of operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals available and accessible by building management/facilities management staff
2	C.	A proactive maintenance policy/procedure for the external site
2	D.	A proactive maintenance policy/procedure for the building fabric
2	E.	A proactive maintenance policy/procedure for the Heating, Ventilation and Cooling (HVAC) systems, as applicable, and hot water
2	F.	A proactive maintenance policy/procedure for the Lighting
2	G.	Regular review of the Building Management Systems by suitably qualified staff from the in-house Facilities Management team
4	H.	Regular review of the Building Management Systems by accredited third party auditor

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p><b>Filtering</b></p> <p>Where systems are not installed, the associated credits can be filtered out of the assessment.</p>	All
2.	<p>Building O&amp;M manuals should cover all current and relevant building services and building elements which may include (but are not limited to):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Heating and cooling systems</li> <li>b) Water distribution systems</li> <li>c) Ventilation systems</li> <li>d) Lighting systems</li> <li>e) External shading systems</li> <li>f) Construction/specification details for building fabric</li> <li>g) Renewable and low carbon technologies (where present)</li> </ul>	B
3.	<p>Maintenance reports should state as a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Person or organisation carrying out the maintenance</li> <li>b) Date the maintenance has been carried out</li> <li>c) Description of building service/element that has been maintained</li> <li>d) Outcomes of maintenance procedure</li> <li>e) Actions following the maintenance procedure</li> <li>f) Date indicating next maintenance interval</li> </ul>	C - H
4.	<p>This issue is addressing full building management systems. Individual automated controls, such as Passive Infra-Red (PIRs) controlling lighting, are not considered to be a building management system.</p>	G, H
5.	<p>In house Facilities Management team members must be trained to be able to operate the building management system to high efficiency standards</p>	G, H
6.	<p>Review of the Building Management system should take into account its performance throughout the year, i.e. during Summer and Winter, or Wet and Dry seasons.</p>	G, H
7.	<p>Accredited third party professionals should be experts in how to operate the specific system which is being assessed. An example of such persons would be:</p> <p>Members of relevant organisations such as the European Building Automation and Controls Association.</p>	H

## Methodology

### Access to O&M manuals:

The Assessor is not required to assess the content of the O&M manuals but must ensure that all relevant documents are available and accessible. Where a building is managed by a building management contractor the manuals may be kept off site, but it is important that the information is in a form that makes it easy for contractors to obtain copies and make use of them on-site.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1, 2	Copies of the front cover and table of contents of the O&M manuals, list of all current and relevant building services and elements.
3 - 6	Formal organisational documentation illustrating maintenance schedules.
3 - 6	Copies of reports of last maintenance procedure for the systems specified. This could be a cover page and table of contents and must clearly state: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Person or organisation carrying out the maintenance</li> <li>b) Date the maintenance has been carried out</li> <li>c) Description of building service/element that has been maintained.</li> </ul>
7	Copy of inspection log or report from the accredited third party.

## Definitions

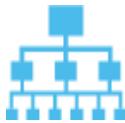
### Building fabric:

The external fabric of a building including, walls, cladding, doors, windows and roofs.

### Proactive maintenance policy:

A maintenance strategy to ensure that the reliability of the installed fittings and water systems is increased. These maintenance policies typically consist of two parts:

- a) **Preventive maintenance:** maintenance, measurements, tests, parts replacement, etc. to prevent faults from occurring.
- b) **Predictive maintenance:** techniques that are designed to help determine the condition of installed equipment in order to predict when maintenance should occur.



## Management Performance: Man 04 Environmental policies and procedures



Credits

Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To recognise and encourage that environmental management provisions are in place.

### Question

Has an environmental management policy or plan been developed by the building management organisation?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
2	B.	The building management organisation has developed and implemented an environmental policy or plan
2	C.	The environmental management policy or plan has been accredited to ISO 14001 or equivalent standards
2	D.	Improvement targets have been set for energy, water and waste/recycling
Exemplary	E.	The environmental management policy or plan addresses resilience and climate risks.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>The environmental management policy or plan must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Be implemented and the review process must ensure that targets are set, and actions plans are completed</li> <li>b) Be approved by the board of directors/senior managers</li> <li>c) Include scope, objectives and targets</li> <li>d) Be available and accessible by all building users.</li> </ul>	B, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	Where the environmental management policy or plan has been ISO 14001 certified, the Assessor does not need to check the content or structure.	C
3.	The environmental management policy or plan identifies which senior employee is responsible for climate risk and other resilience-related issues for the asset.	E

## Evidence

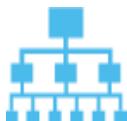
Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	A copy of the environmental policy document highlighting areas in which improvement targets have been set.
2	Where the Environmental Management System is third party certified: a copy of a valid Environmental Management System certificate must be provided.

## Additional information

### Standards equivalent to ISO 14001

The following standards are currently recognised as equivalent to ISO 14001:

- [The EU Eco-Management and Audit Scheme \(EMAS\)](#)
- [Eco-Lighthouse/Miljøfyrtårn](#)



## Management Performance: Man 05 Green lease



Credits

Minimum Standard

### Applicability: n/a

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.



## Management Performance: Health and Wellbeing



### Summary

This category encourages provision of healthy, safe, comfortable and accessible environments, both internally and externally, for all users.

### Context

The World Health Organisation (WHO) defines health as “a state of complete physical, mental and social wellbeing and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity” and that “the enjoyment of the highest attainable standard of health is one of the fundamental rights of every human being without distinction of race, religion, political belief, economic or social condition”. The United Nations has made “Good Health and Wellbeing” one of its 17 Sustainable Development Goals (Goal 3) with the aim to “ensure healthy lives and promote wellbeing for all at all ages”. On average, people spend over 90% of their lives in and around buildings and much of the rest travelling between them. Consequently, the built environment is critical to our health and wellbeing as a result of the conditions and facilities that it provides and the behaviours that it encourages. Additionally, staff costs typically contribute 90% of the total financial burden associated with a building-based business. The impact of productivity, attraction and retention, and general employee satisfaction on the bottom line means that staff wellbeing is vital to business success. The environments in which staff work, live and play are fundamental to all these factors. There is well established evidence that shows that the internal environmental conditions in buildings, including visual comfort, indoor air quality, thermal comfort and acoustic comfort, can have a significant impact on our physical and mental health. Health impacts associated with buildings include eyestrain, cardiovascular and coronary problems, bronchial complaints including asthma and allergies, dermatological complaints, musculoskeletal problems and a range of psychological impacts such as fatigue, stress, anxiety and depression. Higher risk individuals including the young, elderly, disabled and sick, can experience a range of other health impacts arising from their environment many of which can have major and sometimes life-threatening effects.

## Issues

### Hea 14 Thermal comfort

4 credits

**Aim:**

To ensure that residents are thermally comfortable.

**Value:**

Reduces the risk to occupant comfort from extreme or unacceptable indoor temperatures.

Reduces the impact on operational costs and the environment through unnecessary heating or cooling.

### Hea 15 Smoking policy

1 credits

**Aim:**

To recognise and encourage the health benefits of a smoke-free environment and to minimise fire risk.

**Value:**

Supports the short and long-term physical health of occupants by reducing the risk of health concerns associated with second-hand smoke.

Supports occupant comfort and productivity by eliminating a pollution source.

### Hea 16 Indoor air quality management

6 credits

**Aim:**

To encourage and support healthy internal environments with good indoor air quality.

**Value:**

Reduces the potential for indoor air pollution from a variety of pollution sources.

Supports the physical health of building occupants by reducing the risk of health concerns associated with indoor air pollution.

### Hea 17 Acoustic conditions

8 credits

**Aim:**

To ensure the asset provides a good indoor acoustic environment to provide comfortable conditions for residents.

**Value:**

Minimises disturbances to occupants from noise transition and gradients between spaces.

Enhances productivity by providing appropriate acoustic environment for the different functions of various assets and spaces.

### Hea 18 Legionella risk management

4 credits

**Aim:**

To ensure that water systems are managed to minimise the risk from legionella bacteria.

**Value:**

Protects occupants from the health risks due to legionella bacteria.

Preserves the quality and hygiene of the asset water supply to ensure safe use by occupants.

**Hea 19 Drinking water management**

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.



## Management Performance: Hea 14 Thermal comfort



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To ensure that residents are thermally comfortable.

### Question

Is the thermal comfort of residents in occupied spaces regularly monitored?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
4	C.	Yes, through occupant thermal satisfaction surveys

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	The content and format of occupant thermal satisfaction surveys is in accordance with the Methodology section. Surveys should be completed at least every 3 years and all asset users, or a representative sample of asset users, must be offered the opportunity to complete the survey.	C
2.	A reasonable response rate should be achieved for the survey. A response rate of at least 35% is considered reasonable. Where there are fewer than 45 occupants Assessors should use their judgement to determine a reasonable response rate.	C
3.	Procedures must be in place that cover how issues and feedback identified through the occupant thermal satisfaction surveys are addressed. The results and any potential improvement measures should be presented to and considered by senior management.	C

## Methodology

### Occupant thermal satisfaction surveys

ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 55-2017 Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy provides an example thermal satisfaction survey. The following is an adapted version of the survey, which asset owners or managers can use as part of demonstrating compliance with this issue.

Survey question	Answers
1. How satisfied are you with the temperature in your home?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Very satisfied</li> <li>• Satisfied</li> <li>• Somewhat satisfied</li> <li>• Neither satisfied nor dissatisfied</li> <li>• Somewhat dissatisfied</li> <li>• Dissatisfied</li> <li>• Very dissatisfied</li> </ul>
2. If you are dissatisfied with the temperature in your home, which of the following contribute to your dissatisfaction: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In warm/hot weather, the temperature in my space is:</li> <li>In cool/cold weather, the temperature in my space is:</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Always too hot</li> <li>• Often too hot</li> <li>• Occasionally too hot</li> <li>• Occasionally too cold</li> <li>• Often too cold</li> <li>• Always too cold</li> </ul>
3. If you are dissatisfied with the temperature in your home, which of the following contribute to your dissatisfaction: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When is this most often a problem (check all that apply)?</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Morning (before 1100)</li> <li>• Midday (1100 -1400)</li> <li>• Afternoon (1400 -1700)</li> <li>• Evening (after 1700)</li> <li>• Weekends or holidays</li> <li>• Monday mornings</li> <li>• No specific time</li> <li>• Always</li> <li>• Other</li> </ul>
4. If you are dissatisfied with the temperature in your space, which of the following contribute to your dissatisfaction: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>How would you describe the source of this discomfort (check all that apply)?</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Humidity too high (damp)</li> <li>• Humidity too low (dry)</li> <li>• Air movement too high</li> <li>• Air movement too low</li> <li>• Incoming sun</li> <li>• Draughts from windows</li> <li>• Draughts from vents</li> <li>• Thermostat inaccessible</li> <li>• Thermostat is adjusted by other people</li> </ul>

Survey question	Answers
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Heating/cooling system does not respond quickly enough to the thermostat</li> <li>• Hot or cold surrounding surfaces (floor, ceiling, walls or windows)</li> <li>• Deficient window (not operable)</li> <li>• Other</li> </ul>
5. If you are dissatisfied with the temperature in your space, which of the following contribute to your dissatisfaction:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Please describe any other issues related to being too hot or too cold in your space.</li> </ul>

Information collected as part of wider occupant satisfaction surveys, including those performed in accordance with the Man 02 Management engagement and feedback assessment issue requirements, may also be used to demonstrate compliance with the criteria. For example, there are numerous commercially available occupant satisfaction evaluation tools that include thermal comfort related content (e.g. BUS methodology) whose outputs will be relevant to this assessment issue.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Procedure and records for addressing thermal comfort related feedback and issues.
1 - 3	Occupant satisfaction surveys, response rate, analyses and associated records.
3	Documentation, e.g. meeting minutes, showing senior management has reviewed the results of the survey and any potential improvement measures.



## Management Performance: Hea 15 Smoking policy



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the health benefits of a smoke-free environment and to minimise fire risk.

### Question

Is there a policy that prohibits smoking inside the asset and directly outside of the asset?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>The smoking policy must cover the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Apply to all sources of smoking and vaping, including tobacco products, electronic cigarettes and any other non-tobacco sources.</li> <li>b) Apply to all asset users including members of staff, tenants, contractors and visitors.</li> <li>c) Prohibit smoking in all internal areas of the asset including any tenant spaces, if this is not covered by national or local legislation. Dedicated smoking rooms are not permitted.</li> <li>d) Prohibit smoking in all regularly occupied external areas of the asset, e.g. rest spaces, balconies, patios and terraces.</li> <li>e) Prohibit smoking by asset users in any external areas that are within 10 metres horizontal distance (or the minimum distance permitted in local legislation) of all asset entrances, openable windows and ventilation system air intakes.</li> </ul>	C

## Specific notes

Asset type specific	
1.	<p><b>Assets with no or small external areas</b></p> <p>Where there are no external areas within the asset's control that are at least 10 metres horizontal distance from the asset, e.g. an asset's entrance directly borders a public street, the policy must identify suitable external locations where asset users are permitted to smoke that are compliant with criterion 1(e) for both the asset and any other adjacent assets. While criterion 1 does not apply to members of the public who are not asset users, e.g. passing pedestrians, the policy should include measures that try to discourage smoking by non-asset users within close proximity of asset entrances, openable windows and ventilation system air intakes, e.g. through appropriate signage.</p>

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Copy of the smoke-free policy and, where applicable, tenancy agreement(s).
All	Photographic evidence of 'No Smoking' signage and other infrastructure which demonstrates the separation (e.g. outdoor shelters, shade structure).



## Management Performance: Hea 16 Indoor air quality management



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Answers A – G apply to all projects. Answer H applies to Apartment buildings only

### Aim

To encourage and support healthy internal environments with good indoor air quality.

### Question

Are there management processes in place to help maintain good levels of indoor air quality within the asset?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes, provision of information or training to asset users on how to operate and manage the asset's ventilation systems
1	D.	Yes, procedures and plans for inspecting the cleanliness of and for cleaning ventilation system components
1	E.	Yes, procurement policies and operation and maintenance procedures specify products that have low or no emissions of pollutants to air
1	F.	Yes, procedures and plans for regularly monitoring indoor air quality in occupied spaces
1	G.	Yes, procedures or plans that minimise the impacts on the asset's indoor air quality during maintenance, redecoration, refurbishment or construction activities on the asset
1	H.	Yes, procedures and plans for cleaning the interior communal areas of the asset

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p><b>Filtering</b></p> <p>In Individual homes, where the management organisation are not responsible for the procurement of any items within the home this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.</p>	E
2.	<p>Information provided for residents must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cover the correct use of ventilation system controls (including openable windows) where provided in occupied spaces, in order to maintain acceptable levels of indoor air quality.</li> <li>• How to report indoor air quality problems to the asset management.</li> <li>• Be included in the Home User Guide produced for Man 01 Building/Home user guide or, where the credits for Man 01 are not achieved, in other written documentation provided to asset users, such as the information sign in Hea 08 Ventilation system air intakes and exhausts.</li> </ul> <p>Information and training provided for asset management staff and relevant contractors must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cover the technical operation and maintenance of all ventilation systems and associated components.</li> <li>• Include procedures detailing the action(s) to be taken in the event of problems being identified with indoor air quality.</li> </ul>	C
3.	<p>Cleaning procedures and plans include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Extent and frequency of cleaning, i.e. daily, weekly and monthly tasks, including dated cleaning records.</li> <li>• Regular deep cleaning of relevant areas, e.g. carpet, mats and flooring in regularly used areas such as entrances and exits, stairways, lifts, toilets, etc.</li> <li>• Provision of appropriate cleaning equipment and materials that minimise impacts to indoor air quality, e.g. HEPA vacuum cleaners, lint free cloths and dusters, cleaning chemicals and products (see Methodology), etc.</li> <li>• Training requirements and records for cleaning personnel covering cleaning methods and use of equipment and materials.</li> </ul>	H
4.	<p>Inspection and cleaning procedures and plans include the following where present:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Air Handling Units (AHUs)</li> <li>• Ductwork</li> <li>• Filters</li> </ul>	D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Humidifiers</li> <li>• Heating and cooling coil surfaces</li> <li>• Heat recovery units</li> <li>• Air intakes, extracts and exhausts</li> <li>• Terminal units</li> <li>• Decentralised air treatment units, e.g. fan-coil units and induction units.</li> </ul> <p>Inspection and cleaning frequencies should be in accordance with the following standards:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EN 15780:2011 Ventilation for buildings - Ductwork - Cleanliness of ventilation systems, or</li> <li>• Table 8.2 of ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2016 Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality.</li> </ul> <p>Alternatively, where local standards have similar requirements to either of the above standards, the local standard may be used to demonstrate compliance with this criterion.</p>	
5.	<p>Products that should be covered by policies and procedures include, but are not limited to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interior paints and coatings</li> <li>• Interior adhesives and sealants</li> <li>• Flooring materials including carpet</li> <li>• Furniture</li> <li>• Cleaning products.</li> </ul> <p>As a minimum, policies and procedures must cover emissions of very volatile organic compounds (VVOCs), including formaldehyde, and volatile organic compounds (VOCs). The policies and procedures should stipulate appropriate selection criteria for low or no emission products, e.g. reference to specific local standards, testing protocols or product labelling initiatives (see Methodology).</p>	E
6.	<p>Procedures and plans for monitoring indoor air quality shall incorporate and document the following measures conducted at least annually:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Measure the concentrations of relevant indoor air pollutants within the asset using robust monitoring and testing methodologies at representative sampling locations. Real time sensor networks may be used in lieu of point sampling. As a minimum, the monitoring should cover carbon dioxide and at least two other pollutants, e.g.</li> </ul>	F

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	<p>particulate matter, total volatile organic compounds (TVOC), formaldehyde, carbon monoxide, nitrogen oxides (NOx) or radon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Perform occupant surveys that include asset users' perceptions of indoor air quality.</li> <li>• Conduct inspections of the asset's envelope, plumbing, and HVAC equipment to identify sources of moisture and potential for condensation.</li> <li>• Evaluate the asset's ventilation rates, including air flows at intakes and exhausts.</li> </ul> <p>The procedures and plans must also include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operation and maintenance of a system for logging and addressing indoor air quality complaints from asset users.</li> <li>• Action(s) to be taken in the event of the above monitoring identifying any problems.</li> </ul>	
7.	<p>Procedures and plans covering maintenance, redecoration, refurbishment or construction activities should include, but are not limited to, the following measures where appropriate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Avoiding running ventilation systems where possible during works.</li> <li>• Closing and covering air intakes and vents and sealing ductwork prior to works commencing.</li> <li>• Using tools with dust guards and/or collectors fitted with appropriate HEPA filters to capture dust and particulate matter generated during works.</li> <li>• Regularly cleaning work areas throughout the works and increasing cleaning schedules for occupied areas.</li> <li>• Cleaning HVAC ductwork and changing filters during and after completion of the works.</li> <li>• Planning and coordinating works to minimise disruption to occupied areas.</li> <li>• Isolating work areas from other spaces by sealing doorways and windows or through physical separation (e.g. temporary barriers).</li> <li>• Maintaining occupied spaces under positive pressure relative to the outside and to internal areas undergoing works.</li> <li>• Implementing measures to avoid the tracking of dirt and pollutants from work areas to occupied areas (e.g. use of mats at entrances and exits, separation of access routes for occupants and works).</li> </ul>	G
8.	All policies, procedures and plans must be reviewed at least every 3 years or sooner in the event of significant changes to the number of asset users or a change in use of space.	C - H

## Methodology

### Low or no emission products

There are a wide range of local and international standards, testing protocols and labelling initiatives for low emission products. The uptake of such initiatives, and therefore the availability of low or no emission products on the market, will vary between countries. Therefore, policies and procedures should reference local or international product initiatives that are active in the asset's location. Examples of such initiatives include but are not limited to:

- Ausschuss zur gesundheitlichen Bewertung von Bauprodukten (AgBB) evaluation scheme
- Belgian VOC regulation
- Blue Angel Ecolabel
- eco-INSTITUT-Label
- EMICODE
- EU Ecolabel
- FloorScore®
- French VOC regulation
- GREENGUARD Certified/GREENGUARD Gold
- Green Label Plus™
- GUT Label
- Indoor Air Comfort®/Indoor Air Comfort Gold®
- Indoor Advantage™ Gold - Building Materials
- M1 Emission Classification of Building Materials
- Nordic Swan Ecolabel

### Indoor air quality management procedures and plans

The indoor air quality within an asset and the associated management requirements to maintain a good level of indoor air quality will depend on various factors, including:

- The asset's location, size, layout and form
- The type and usage of the asset
- External air quality
- Internal sources of pollutants
- The asset's ventilation strategy
- The requirements of asset users, owners or managers.

The content and detail of indoor air quality management related procedures and plans will therefore need to be specific to the asset under assessment. For example, the procedures and plans for naturally ventilated single-family homes in an area of good external air quality with few sources of internal pollutants may be relatively simple, whereas other assets will require more complex procedures and plans. Procedures and plans must cover all areas of the asset within the scope of the assessment, i.e. those areas that are under the control of the asset management organisation.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Copies of relevant policies, procedures and plans and associated records.

## Additional information

### Guidance on indoor air quality during maintenance, redecoration, refurbishment or construction

The Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA) guidance 'IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction' provides guidance on minimising the impact of maintenance, redecoration, refurbishment or construction activities on indoor air quality in operational buildings. Projects may wish to reference the SMACNA guidance when demonstrating compliance with criterion 6.



## Management Performance: Hea 17 Acoustic conditions



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To ensure the asset provides a good indoor acoustic environment to provide comfortable conditions for residents.

### Question

Has the acoustic environment been evaluated in terms of sound insulation and indoor ambient noise levels?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Acoustic conditions are covered within the occupant satisfaction survey
2	D.	All noise feedback has been resolved or there were no noise issues in the latest occupant satisfaction survey.
1	E.	Yes, performance standards for internal ambient noise levels are achieved.
2	F.	Yes, performance standards external ambient noise levels are achieved.
1	G.	Yes, performance standards for airborne and impact sound insulation levels are achieved.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Occupant satisfaction surveys are performed in accordance with the Man 02 Management engagement and feedback assessment issue criteria 5 and 6, and the surveys cover residents' perception of their home's internal and external noise environment.	C & D
2.	Where noise issues were identified in the occupant satisfaction survey responses, the building manager should demonstrate how these issues have been addressed. This may include remedial measures such as	D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	installation of sound insulation, servicing and maintenance of HVAC systems, etc.	
3.	<p>A suitably qualified acoustician (SQA) has evaluated the acoustic environment in relevant spaces against relevant performance standards for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Sound insulation.</li> <li>b) Ambient noise levels.</li> </ul> <p>The SQA must select appropriate asset specific performance targets to assess the acoustic environment based on current local standards, building regulations or industry best practice. Alternatively, the SQA may use the performance standards stipulated in criteria 2 and 3, e.g. in the case where it can be justified that there are no appropriate local standards, building regulations or industry best practice.</p>	E - G
4.	Ambient noise levels comply with the performance standards in Table 27.	E & F
5.	Sound insulation levels comply with the performance standards in Table 28.	G
6.	Performance testing should be conducted in accordance with local standards or industry best practice selected by the SQA or in accordance with the Methodology section below.	E - G

## Methodology

Where there are no appropriate local standards, building regulations or industry best practice, the following procedures can be followed by the SQA when measuring or calculating the levels required to demonstrate compliance with this assessment issue. Where it is necessary to deviate from the procedures, the SQA should provide a reason for doing so and confirm that the alternative procedures are adequate for demonstrating that the asset meets the acoustic performance requirements.

### Internal ambient noise levels - habitable spaces and kitchens

For measurements of internal ambient noise levels, the following procedures should be used:

1. The measurements of internal ambient noise levels should be undertaken by the SQA. However, where measurements are made by others, the SQA must verify these.
2. At least one in ten homes on a development should be subject to on-site acoustic testing.
3. The homes selected for testing shall be those considered by the SQA to be most exposed to environmental noise sources. The selection criteria should be outlined in the report from the SQA detailing the results of the measurements. Where it is not clear which homes would be most exposed to environmental noise, the number of homes tested should be increased to ensure the worst case is tested.
4. Measurements should be made in at least one bedroom and one other habitable room for each home tested. The rooms selected should be those in which noise levels are expected to be greatest, and so generally on the façade most exposed to environmental noise.
5. Windows should be closed for the measurements, but trickle vents (if required for the ventilation strategy) should be open during the measurements.

6. External and internal doors should be shut during the measurements.
7. Noise from building services should be included in the measurements, where they are required for normal background ventilation and heating purposes, i.e. heat pumps, boilers, active ventilation systems etc.
8. Extract fans within nearby bathrooms, WCs and en-suites should be running when making measurements within bedrooms. The door between the room with the extract fan and bedroom should be shut.
9. Noise from occupants and white goods should not be included in the measurements.
10. If the rooms are not carpeted or furnished, then the results of the measurements should be corrected in accordance with a nationally accepted methodology.
11. Measurements need not be made over the full day (07:00–23:00 hours) if a shorter measurement period can be used. In this case, measurements should be made when external noise levels are representative of normal conditions throughout the periods.
12. Measurement periods of less than 30 minutes may give representative values for internal noise levels and may be utilized where this is the case. However, measurement periods shorter than 5 minutes should not be used. The actual duration of measurement shall be determined by the SQA and included within the measurement report.
13. Measurements should be taken in a minimum of three locations in rooms at a height of 1.2m above the floor level and at least 1m away from any surface.
14. Compliance with the daytime criteria is through on-site measurement.
15. Compliance with the night-time criteria can be assumed for bedrooms, provided that they comply with the daytime criteria. This is subject to confirmation from an SQA that any building services noise will not elevate the room levels to above the limit. It may be convenient to quantify the building services noise through a short measurement during the daytime period.

#### **Internal ambient noise levels - open-plan rooms that include a kitchen**

For demonstrating compliance with the specified targets for kitchens which are part of an open plan room, two test conditions are required. The guidance contained above in points 1 - 3, 5 - 7 and 9 - 15 should be followed. In addition:

- The lower target (found in Table 27) should be achieved when the system is operating at the minimum rate\* for continuous extract ventilation systems and for intermittent extract ventilation system, it should not be running.
- The upper target (found in Table 27) should be achieved when the system is operating at the boost rate\* for continuous extract ventilation systems or the minimum rate\* for intermittent extract ventilation. The noise associated with the upper target can be measured over a reduced time period compared to that for the lower target.
- To achieve the night time target (found in Table 27), the ventilation system should be operating at the minimum rate\* for continuous extract ventilation systems and for intermittent extract ventilation system, it should not be running.

\*for ventilation rates refer to national best practice ventilation guidance.

Note: When determining the internal ambient noise levels associated with the home a degree of tolerance is allowed to account for measurements of uncertainty and variability in sound levels as follows:

- A tolerance of + 3 dB is allowed for an individual room. However, the targets in Table 27 should be achieved by the average of rooms within each group.

#### **External ambient noise levels**

For measurements of noise in external functional spaces, the following procedures should be used:

1. Measurements of external ambient noise should be undertaken by the SQA. However, where measurements are made by others, the SQA must verify these.
2. Sufficient measurements should be made in order to determine a reasonable average for the external functional space. The number of measurement points should be determined by the SQA and take account of the general usable space.
3. It may not be necessary to measure the noise in every external functional space; in this case representative sampling as defined by the SQA would be appropriate.
4. Noise from environmental sources (e.g. traffic noise) should be included and also any mechanical or electrical plant associated with the home or the neighbouring properties such as the external units of a heat pump. Any plant should be running at normal operating duty.
5. Measurements need not be made over the full day (07:00–23:00 hours) if a shorter measurement period can be used. In this case, measurements should be made when external noise levels are representative of normal conditions throughout the periods.
6. Measurement periods of less than 30 minutes may give representative values for external noise levels and may be utilised where this is the case. However, measurement periods shorter than 5 minutes should not be used. The actual duration of measurement shall be determined by the SQA and detailed within the measurement report.
7. If existing external noise level data are available, then calculations by the SQA may also be used to demonstrate compliance with the criteria. External data may take the form of existing noise survey data or local noise modelling or mapping.
8. Where noisy activities are occurring in the vicinity of the space that would not be expected to be present when the home is occupied (e.g. construction activities), then the measurements should be made in the absence of the noise source. This may mean that the activity is temporarily suspended for the testing, or the testing is done when the activity is not taking place.

Note: When determining the external ambient noise levels associated with the home a degree of tolerance is allowed to account for measurements of uncertainty and variability in sound levels as follows:

- The targets in Table 27 should be achieved by the average of all measurements considered necessary to evaluate the overall noise level of the external functional space as a whole.

### Sound insulation

Measurements of airborne and impact sound insulation should be made in accordance with the relevant part of the ISO 16283 series and should be performed by an SQA. As a minimum, one set of tests for every 10 homes in a group (houses, apartments or bungalows are defined as the groups) and each sub-group (typically these are different construction type groups) is required. In the event of less than 10 homes, one set of tests is carried out. Usually one unit should be selected to determine the number of tests required as follows:

Table 26: Number of tests forming a set of tests

Group Type	Airborne tests- separating walls	Airborne tests – separating floors	Impact tests - separating floors	Total
Houses or bungalows	2	0	0	2
Apartments	2	2	2	6

The actual number of tests possible may be limited by the layout. Where this is the case then the SQA should clearly identify why the full number of tests was not feasible within the test report or covering correspondence.

Where a home is detached, no measurements are required, and the sound insulation credit can be awarded by default

### Previous ambient noise and sound insulation measurement results

Where on-site performance testing was undertaken at the time of construction or refurbishment of the home, this information can be used to demonstrate compliance with the criteria if no changes to the fabric or building services have been made since the original testing, and the SQA confirms that the testing and results were in accordance with the criteria. Where changes to the fabric or building services have been made since the home was commissioned or previous testing was performed, then the testing information needs to be supplemented to take account of the changes. The additional testing should be performed in accordance with the criteria or guidance above and be targeted to take account of the specific alterations, e.g. sound insulation testing of replaced partitions or internal ambient noise level measurements where work has been performed on ventilation systems or the external fabric.

## Checklists and Tables

Table 27: Performance standards for ambient noise levels in selected spaces

Time of day	Habitable rooms $L_{Aeq,T}$	Kitchens $L_{Aeq,T}$	Open plan rooms that a kitchen is part of $L_{Aeq,T}$	External functional spaces $L_{Aeq,T}$
Day (07:00- 23:00)	35dB	35dB	Lower target: 35dB Upper target: 45dB	55dB
Night (23:00- 07:00)	30dB (Bedrooms only)	35 dB	35dB	-

Table 28: Performance standards for airborne and impact sound insulation levels

Airborne sound insulation for separating walls and floors between homes $DnT,w + Ctr$ dB (minimum values)	Impact sound insulation for separating floors between homes $L'nT,w$ dB (maximum values)
48dB	59dB

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1 - 2	A copy of the occupant satisfaction survey and a sample of completed surveys
2	Documentation (e.g. SQA report) showing that remedial actions have been implemented to resolve any noise issues OR summary of results from occupant satisfaction survey confirming that there were no noise issues identified.
3 - 6	Records or report from the SQA demonstrating the measured acoustic performance.
3 - 6	Details of the SQA responsible for the acoustic testing and assessment of the acoustic environment; including summary of their qualification(s).

## Definitions

### Suitably qualified acoustician:

An individual achieving all the following items is considered as 'suitably qualified' for the purposes of this assessment issue:

- Has a minimum of three years' relevant experience (within the last five years) with such experience clearly demonstrating a practical understanding of factors affecting acoustics in relation to construction and the built environment; including acting in an advisory capacity to provide recommendations for suitable acoustic performance levels and mitigation measures.
- An individual who holds a recognised acoustic qualification and membership of an appropriate professional body.

Where an SQA is verifying the acoustic measurements or calculations carried out by another acoustician who does not meet the SQA requirements, they must, as a minimum, have read and reviewed the report and confirm in writing that they have found it to:

- Represent sound industry practice
- Be appropriate given the building being assessed and scope of works proposed
- Avoid invalid, biased and exaggerated recommendations.

Additionally, written confirmation from the third-party verifier that they comply with the definition of an SQA is required.

### External Functional Spaces:

Examples include, but not limited to:

- A private garden
- A communal garden or courtyard
- Balconies
- Roof terraces
- Patios

**Habitable room:**

This is a room used for home purposes, but which is not solely a kitchen, utility room, bathroom, cellar or sanitary accommodation.



## Management Performance: Hea 18 Legionella risk management



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To ensure that water systems are managed to minimise the risk from legionella bacteria.

### Question

Has an assessment of the asset's water systems been performed to identify the potential risk of exposure to legionella bacteria and, if so, are management processes in place to prevent or control the risk?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Guidance on minimising legionella risk is provided to residents
3	D.	A full risk assessment and management process is in place

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>Guidance should cover the following topic:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What is Legionella?</li> <li>• The associated health risks</li> <li>• Simple measures that residents can take to minimise these risks themselves</li> </ul> <p>Guidance can be included as part of the Home User Guide, but can also be repeated at appropriate times, e.g. during summer holiday season.</p>	C
2.	<p>A competent person has performed a risk assessment that identifies and assesses the risk of exposure of asset users to legionella bacteria from the asset's water systems and any required prevention or control measures. All water systems that present a potential risk from legionella bacteria must be assessed, including, but not limited to:</p>	D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	<p>a) Hot and cold-water storage and distribution systems</p> <p>b) Evaporative cooling systems, e.g. cooling towers and evaporative condensers</p> <p>c) Spa pools, hot tubs and whirlpool baths</p> <p>d) Fountains and water features</p> <p>e) Humidifiers</p> <p>f) Emergency showers, eyebaths and face-wash fountains</p> <p>g) Industrial water systems, e.g. air washers, wet scrubbers, vehicle washers, wastewater treatment plants, misting devices and sprinkler systems.</p> <p>A water system includes all equipment and components associated with that system, e.g. all associated pipework, pumps, feed tanks, valves, showers, heat exchangers, quench tanks, water softeners, chillers, etc.</p>	
3.	<p>Where the risk assessment identifies that prevention or control measures are necessary, the following must be in place:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) A competent person or persons appointed to manage the identified risks and control measures (this could be an employee or a contractor).</li> <li>b) Documentation specifying the measures implemented to prevent or control the risk (see Methodology).</li> <li>c) Process and procedure(s) for the regular monitoring and inspection of the condition and performance of the water systems and control measures, and the remedial actions to be taken in the event of a failure in control measures.</li> <li>d) Written records including details of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The findings of the risk assessment.</li> <li>• The prevention and control measures and their implementation.</li> <li>• The state of operation of each system, i.e. in use or not in use.</li> <li>• The results and dates of all monitoring, inspection, testing or checks of the system(s).</li> <li>• The competent person(s) and all personnel concerned with the operation and maintenance of the system(s) and their training records.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Where a risk assessment shows that risks are low and that no prevention and control measures are required, it is not necessary to demonstrate compliance with this criterion (subject to compliance with criterion 4).</p>	D
4.	The risk assessment must be reviewed periodically, especially following any changes to the water system(s) or changes to the asset's operation that may	D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	result in significant changes to water use within the asset, e.g. change in number of users or change in use of space(s).	

## Methodology

### Legionella prevention and control measures

Prevention and control measures include, but are not limited to:

- a) Avoiding water temperatures between 20°C and 45°C and conditions that favour the growth of legionella bacteria and other microorganisms.
- b) Avoiding water stagnation which may encourage the growth of biofilm.
- c) Avoiding the use of materials that harbour bacteria and other microorganisms or provide nutrients for microbial growth.
- d) Controlling the release of water spray.
- e) Maintaining the cleanliness of the system and water in it.
- f) Using water treatment techniques, e.g. biocides, chlorination, heat.
- g) Ensuring the correct and safe operation and maintenance of the water system.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	A copy of the guidance provided to residents
2	Documentation in accordance with criterion 2.

## Definitions

### Legionella:

Genus of bacteria that can cause infection (Legionellosis) through the inhalation of contaminated water droplets or aerosols, which can range in severity from a mild, febrile illness (Pontiac fever) to a rapid and potentially fatal pneumonia (Legionnaires' disease).

### Competent person:

A person that has sufficient authority, competence and knowledge of the asset to ensure that all operational procedures are carried out in a timely and effective manner, and has such ability, experience, instruction, information, training and resources to enable them to carry out their tasks competently and safely. In particular, they should know the:

- a) Potential sources of legionella bacteria and the risks they present;
- b) Measures to adopt, including the precautions to take to protect the people concerned, and their significance;

- c) Measures to take to ensure that the control measures remain effective, and their significance.

## Additional information

### Legionella and water systems guidance

Guidance on the risk assessment and control of legionella bacteria in water systems include:

- American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 188-2018 Legionellosis: Risk Management for Building Water Systems; 2018.
- American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; ASHRAE Guideline 12-2000 - Minimizing the Risk of Legionellosis Associated with Building Water Systems; 2000.
- British Standards Institution; BS 8580-1:2019 Water quality – Risk assessments for Legionella control – Code of practice; 2019.
- The Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers; CIBSE TM13: 2013 Minimising the risk of Legionnaires' disease; 2013.
- European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control; European Technical Guidelines for the Investigation, Control and Prevention of Travel Associated Legionnaires' Disease; 2017.
- World Health Organisation; Legionella and the Prevention of Legionellosis; 2007.



## Management Performance: Hea 19 Drinking water management



Credits

No Minimum Standard

### Applicability: n/a

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.



## Management Performance: Energy



### Summary

This category recognises buildings which have lower operational energy consumption and carbon emissions. Issues in this section assess the assessed energy efficiency of the asset. This includes the energy efficiency of the building fabric, the energy efficiency of installed services systems, installed renewable energy generation capacity and standard equipment associated with the use of the building, for example, office equipment. However, energy uses associated with specialist processes and equipment loads are excluded. The operational energy performance implicitly takes account of how well energy consumption is managed within the building. Improvements in the operational energy performance of the asset are also recognised in this category.

### Context

Climate change is the biggest environmental challenge that the world is currently facing. It is already resulting in higher global temperatures, greater risk flooding and more extreme weather events. It is mainly due to rising levels of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, such as methane, in the atmosphere create a 'greenhouse effect', that is causing the Earth to warm. Greenhouse gas emissions have increased by about 45% since before the industrial revolution and this is almost entirely due to human activity.

The observed increase in greenhouse gas emissions is mainly caused by the burning of fossil fuels for energy, agriculture, deforestation and industrial processes. Worldwide, buildings and construction together account of 39% of energy related carbon emissions, the majority of which is due to energy consumption in use. The impact on people and communities from climate change and energy generation must be recognised. Poorer communities are disproportionately impacted by the negative effects of climate change and energy generation from fossil fuels, contributing to poor health, higher mortality rates and higher risks of severe damage from extreme weather events.

The Paris Agreement, ratified in 2016, reflects a desire to accelerate the global response to the threat of climate change by limiting global temperature rise this century to at least 2°C, and preferably 1.5°C, above pre-industrial levels. Subsequently, in October 2018 the urgency of the need to tackle climate change was highlighted by an IPCC Special Report which indicates that it will be necessary to limit this increase to 1.5°C to avoid the most severe impacts of climate change. The report concludes that to limit the increase to 1.5°C CO<sub>2</sub> emissions must reduce by around 45% from 2010 levels by 2030, and to reach net zero emissions by 2050. This scale of reduction will require rapid and far-reaching transitions for all energy systems, including buildings.

It is therefore vital to substantially reduce the total operational energy use in buildings and to increase use of renewable energy sources where possible, if the worse effects of climate change are to be avoided. Addressing climate change and shifting the way in which we produce and use energy can help address inequities such as fuel poverty that are currently present in our communities and provide a healthy environment for all demographic and economic groups, especially those that are part of less advantaged or underserved communities.

## Issues

<b>Ene 19-22</b>	<b>Operational energy calculator</b>	<b>50 credits</b>
------------------	--------------------------------------	-------------------

**Aim:**

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by employing effective energy management practices, increasing intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and installing energy efficient buildings services and equipment.

**Value:**

Identifies assets that are performing poorly compared to their peers and to prompt improvement actions where appropriate.

Encourages the adoption of good energy management practices.

Increases the energy efficiency of the asset.

Reduces energy wastage.

Reduces costs relating to operational energy use.

Encourages the use of on-site renewable energy generation and the use of low carbon energy sources.

Encourages the specification of more energy efficient fabric and building servicing system components and equipment.

<b>Ene 22</b>	<b>Energy audit</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
---------------	---------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To identify and implement cost-effective opportunities for energy savings

**Value:**

Encourages a systematic procedure for obtaining sufficient knowledge about the energy consumption of an asset.

Rewards the ability to identify and quantify cost-effective energy saving opportunities.

Encourages these findings to be reported.

<b>Ene 23</b>	<b>Energy consumption data use</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
---------------	------------------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by encouraging measurement against energy performance targets and by increasing the awareness and understanding of energy consumption amongst building managers and users.

**Value:**

Encourages the setting of energy performance targets.

Facilitates good energy management practices amongst building users.

Encourages increased energy efficiency of the asset.

Encourages reduced energy wastage.

Reduces costs relating to operational energy use.

Encourages the specification of more energy efficient fabric and building servicing system components and equipment.

Ene 24	Reduction of carbon emissions	3 Exemplary credits
--------	-------------------------------	---------------------

**Aim:**

To recognise reductions in operational energy consumption of the common areas and the associated carbon emissions achieved.

**Value:**

Encourages and rewards the adoption of good energy management practices.

Encourages and rewards the use of on-site renewable energy generation and the use of low carbon energy sources.

Encourages and rewards increased energy efficiency of the asset.

Encourages and rewards reduced energy wastage.

Reduces costs relating to operational energy use.

Encourages the specification of more energy efficient fabric and building servicing system components and equipment.

## Operational energy calculator guidance

### Introduction

This section has been produced to give further guidance on the workings of the operational energy calculator so it is clear how any reductions in operational energy consumption will be reflected in the calculation of the operational energy rating.

### Overview

In order to calculate the operational energy rating, the carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) emissions resulting from assessed asset energy consumption are compared to the equivalent CO<sub>2</sub>eq emissions for a reference asset. There are three main parts to the methodology: establishing the reference benchmark, establishing the actual building CO<sub>2</sub>eq emissions, and comparing the reference benchmark with the actual CO<sub>2</sub>eq emissions to generate a rating.

### Establishing reference benchmark

The reference benchmark is set according to the asset subtype being assessed. For assets where more than one activity carried out (e.g. an apartment block with a retail unit on the ground floor), the floor area can be divided into a maximum of five different asset subtypes. This reference benchmark for the asset is determined based on a floor area weighted average for the asset which is adjusted to take account of local climate using the same degree day calculation methodology used for the asset model. Because the reference benchmarks are based on typical assets comprising a mix of both air conditioned and naturally ventilated spaces the methodology will recognise the lower energy consumption of naturally ventilated properties.

### Establishing assessed energy consumption

The metered energy consumption is used as the starting point for establishing the actual energy consumption for the assessed asset. It is possible to make the following 'corrections' to the metered energy consumption data:

A final correction is then made to account for consumption data based on any reporting period that is not 365 days.

Users are able to enter metered energy consumption for many different fuel types including: grid supplied electricity, natural gas, LPG, gas oil, solid fossil fuels, biodiesel, biogas, wood, district heating and district cooling.

Once the energy consumption for each fuel type has been entered, the tool calculates the associated kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq emissions for the assessed asset by multiplying the consumption data by the relevant carbon emission factors for each fuel type. As for the reference baseline, the carbon emission factor for electricity varies according to the country of assessment, but the emission factors for non-electrical consumption are fixed. The only exception to this is for district heating and cooling systems where it is possible to enter the actual emissions factor for the system where known.

### Establishing final score

The operational energy rating is then calculated by comparing the actual kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq emissions to the reference kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq emissions using a sliding scale with maximum credits being awarded for a zero carbon building, and zero credits awarded where the actual emissions are more than four times the reference emissions. An additional five exemplary credits are available for buildings that are carbon positive. Table 29 shows the operational energy performance scale and the number of credits awarded.

Table 29: Operational energy performance scale and credits awarded.

Credits	Actual kgCO <sub>2</sub> /m <sup>2</sup> / Benchmark CO <sub>2</sub> /m <sup>2</sup>	Credits	Actual kgCO <sub>2</sub> /m <sup>2</sup> / Benchmark CO <sub>2</sub> /m <sup>2</sup>
0	>4	50+3 exemplary	<-0.04 to -0.6
1	<4 to 3.81	50+4 exemplary	<-0.6 to -0.8
2	<3.81 to 3.63	50+1 exemplary	<-0.8 to -1
3	<3.63 to 3.45		
4	<3.45 to 3.27		
5	<3.27 to 3.11		
6	<3.11 to 2.95		
7	<2.95 to 2.79		
8	<2.79 to 2.64		
9	<2.64 to 2.5		
10	<2.5 to 2.36		
11	<2.36 to 2.22		
12	<2.22 to 2.09		
13	<2.09 to 1.97		
14	<1.97 to 1.85		
15	<1.85 to 1.74		
16	<1.74 to 1.63		
17	<1.63 to 1.52		
18	<1.52 to 1.42		
19	<1.42 to 1.33		
20	<1.33 to 1.24		
21	<1.24 to 1.15		
22	<1.15 to 1.06		
23	<1.06 to 0.99		
24	<0.99 to 0.91		
25	<0.91 to 0.84		
26	<0.84 to 0.77		
27	<0.77 to 0.71		
28	<0.71 to 0.65		
29	<0.65 to 0.59		
30	<0.59 to 0.53		
31	<0.53 to 0.48		
32	<0.48 to 0.44		
33	<0.44 to 0.39		
34	<0.39 to 0.35		
35	<0.35 to 0.31		
36	<0.31 to 0.28		
37	<0.28 to 0.24		
38	<0.24 to 0.21		
39	<0.21 to 0.18		
40	<0.18 to 0.16		
41	<0.16 to 0.13		
42	<0.13 to 0.11		
43	<0.11 to 0.09		
44	<0.09 to 0.07		
45	<0.07 to 0.06		
46	<0.06 to 0.04		
47	<0.04 to 0.03		
48	<0.03 to 0.02		
49	<0.02 to 0.01		
50	<0.01 to 0		
50+1 exemplary	<0 to -0.2		
50+2 exemplary	<-0.2 to -0.04		



## Management Performance: Ene 19 Energy consumption



Contributes to 50 credits  
available for operational  
energy rating

No Minimum  
Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by employing effective energy management practices, increasing intrinsic energy efficiency of the building fabric and installing energy efficient buildings services and equipment.

### Question

Annually, how much energy is consumed by the asset in kWh/year (as metered in the reporting period)?  
Please enter the start and end date of the annual reporting period for consumption data.

Credits	Fuel Type	Units	Start date	End date
-	Grid supply electricity	kWh/year		
-	Natural gas	kWh/year		
-	Burning oil / Kerosene	kWh/year		
-	Gas oil	kWh/year		
-	Fuel oil	kWh/year		
-	Diesel	kWh/year		
-	Petrol	kWh/year		
-	LPG	kWh/year		
-	Other petroleum gas	kWh/year		
-	Coal	kWh/year		
-	Biodiesel	kWh/year		
-	Landfill gas	kWh/year		
-	Other biogas	kWh/year		

Credits	Fuel Type	Units	Start date	End date
-	Wood	kWh/year		
-	Renewable heat source or renewable cooling source	kWh/year		
-	District heating	kWh/year		
-	District cooling	kWh/year		

Note: Consumption data, start and end date should be entered under Ene 19a in the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform.

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria
1.	For all energy sources, all consumption data must relate specifically to the floor area of the asset that is being assessed. This must be the GIA floor area that has been entered in under Asset Dimensions.
2.	Assessors must ensure that the reporting period for each energy source is between 11 – 13 months (334 to 397 days) and that the maximum time gap between the earliest start and the latest end date across all fuels must be no greater than 14 months (428 days).
3.	All energy consumption must be entered for the asset. If the asset uses an energy source that is not listed, please contact BRE for guidance on how to account for this.

## Methodology

Table 30: Fuel specific guidance is provided below:

Fuel type	Guidance	Notes
Burning oil /Kerosene	Fuel usage can be recorded through: a) Sub-metering of equipment which use these fuels	Please note: the consumption figure is for fuel which has been used directly within the asset NOT for vehicles or other appliances which operate on-site, unless this is specified within the scope.
Diesel	b) Estimates of system efficiency and running times (Oils only)	
Fuel oil	c) Calculations based on inventory data	
Gas oil		
Petrol		
LPG		
Natural gas		
Other petroleum gas		

Fuel type	Guidance	Notes
Landfill gas		
Coal	<p>Calculating the amount of fuel consumption can be achieved through:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Sub-metering of equipment which use these fuels</li> <li>b) Invoices for materials purchased during the reporting period and calculations based on the calorific content of the material.</li> </ul>	Please note: fuel consumption related to the burning of solid material for the purposes of creating heat, such as Smokeless fuel, Coal and Anthracite.
Biodiesel		Please note cooking oil can only be used when it has been appropriately refined to a standard which is suitable for fuel usage.
Biogas		Please note biogas can be used from off-site suppliers or as a result of on-site generation, following a process such as anaerobic digestion etc.
Wood	For wood/waste wood, fuel consumption can be achieved through invoices for materials purchased during the reporting period and calculations based on the calorific content of the material.	-
Renewable heat source or renewable cooling source	Consumption date should be calculated from metered data	-
District heating	For district heating and/or cooling consumption, energy consumption can be calculated through, but not limited to:	-
District cooling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Sub-metering of equipment</li> <li>b) Building energy management systems</li> <li>c) Calculation via energy bills for fuel types if these fuel types are only used for district heating etc.</li> </ul>	

### Verification of consumption data

Where consumption data has been entered into the Part 2 Energy Calculator, the Assessor must provide evidence to support it and demonstrate its correlation to the assessed area. The consumption figures shall be supported by either corresponding energy bills or verified meter readings. This means that, for example, simply submitting a spreadsheet containing consumption figures is not compliant and clear demonstration that this has been verified is required. Furthermore, it is also possible that the energy bills available to an asset might not coincide with the assessed area for the asset, in which case further evidence is required to demonstrate the assessed consumption for the assessed area.

Since there are many different methods in which energy data can be monitored (e.g. manual meter readings, Energy Management Systems etc.), the format used when submitting meter readings often varies between assessments, leading to confusion for Assessors on whether particular evidence meets the requirements.

When neither energy bills nor meter readings (verified by the Assessor) are available for the assessed area it is possible to submit the following evidence to support consumption data figures:

1. Clear description of how the consumption data was obtained, e.g. manual reading, automatic reading from a BMS, energy bills, etc.;
2. Clear description of any calculation carried out, e.g. energy use determined by subtracting sub-metered data from main meter readings;
3. Clear reporting of the period the consumption data relates to, i.e. start date and end-date for each consumption figure;
4. Clear confirmation that the figures submitted refer to the consumption for the assessed area and that they are based on metered data, rather than estimations or apportionment). Such confirmation will be provided and signed from either someone internal to the organisation or the Assessor themselves.

**Note:** Where this is undertaken by someone other than the Assessor, the Assessor must be satisfied that the information is correct, and that the individual has a good understanding of metering systems and of the metering strategy of the particular asset being assessed. This should be clearly outlined within the Assessor comments.

#### **Energy sources start being used, or stop being used part way through the reporting period**

BREEAM considers the overall consumption for a 12-month period rather than when sources were added or changed during that period. Where an energy source, such as on-site renewable energy generation capacity, begins contributing to or stops contributing to the energy used by the asset part way through the year, the start and end dates entered should still match the reporting period for all energy uses.

#### **Non-standard energy consumption:**

The energy consumption for large energy intensive loads and all external lighting may be subtracted from the overall asset energy consumption where it is separately sub-metered.

Examples of non-standard energy uses include:

- a) Gyms: The area/room that comprises the gym and any associate changing rooms.
- b) Indoor swimming pools: The area/room that contains the swimming pool and any associated changing rooms.
- c) Mechanically ventilated car parking: The area comprising the car park.

#### **Reporting period**

The intention is that the user enters energy consumption data based on 365 day reporting period; for both years. However, it is possible to enter data for any reporting period between 11 and 13 months. Any reporting period outside of the 11 to 13-month range would be invalid and result in zero credits being scored.

### Validity of consumption data

In order to maintain the reliability of data entered into the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform, any consumption-related data submitted must have a reporting period start date which is no more than one year prior to the start of the assessment (creation of a measurement).

For example, if the assessment was started on the 3rd of January 2020, the reporting period start date cannot be prior to 3rd of January 2019. A more recent period can always be entered, as long as the Assessor can verify that the data is correct for the period entered.

### Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	Calculations based on inventory data.
2	Copies of energy bills or verified meter readings/ photographic evidence of meters for the beginning and end of the reporting period for each energy source.



## Management Performance: Ene 20 Carbon intensity district heating and cooling



Contributes to 50 credits available for operational energy rating

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by employing effective energy management practices.

### Question

1. If known, what is the carbon intensity of the district heating system in kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq/kWh delivered heat?
2. If known, what is the carbon intensity of the district cooling system in kgCO<sub>2</sub>eq/kWh delivered cooling?

Credits	Question	Enter value
-	1	kgCO <sub>2</sub> eq/kWh
-	2	kgCO <sub>2</sub> eq/kWh

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria
1.	The carbon intensity of the district heating and/or cooling system would be sourced from the supplier of this system.
2.	The carbon intensity value should be an average annual value and should be provided for the most recent year available.
3.	As a minimum, the carbon emissions from all fuels used to generate heat or to generate cooling must include all direct (scope 1) emissions and indirect (scope 2) emissions associated with any electricity used to generate heat or to generate cooling and take account of distribution losses.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	Relevant literature/records/data or other information from the district heating and/or district cooling supplier stating the carbon intensity of the system



## Management Performance: Ene 21 Renewable electricity generated



Contributes to 50 credits  
available for operational  
energy rating

No Minimum  
Standard

### Applicability: All projects

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by generating renewable electricity.

### Question

1. What is the quantity of energy generated by on-site and community renewable energy schemes in kWh per year (as metered in the reporting period)?
2. What is the net quantity of electricity exported off-site in kWh per year (as metered in the reporting period)?

Credits	Question	Enter value
-	1.	kWh/year
-	2.	kWh/year

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria
1.	To qualify as on-site or community renewable energy the generation source must be located on or near to the asset and must be connected to the asset using a private wire arrangement.
2.	Assessors must confirm that the metered electricity data relates to the start and end date

### Methodology

#### Reporting period

The intention is that the user enters energy consumption data based on a 365-day reporting period; for both years. However, it is possible to enter data for any reporting period between 11 and 13 months. Any reporting period outside of the 11 to 13-month range would be invalid and result in zero credits being scored.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	Photographic evidence of relevant generation and export meters
2	BEMS data or copies of verified data for the reporting period specified

## Definition

### Private wire arrangement:

A private wire arrangement is one where electricity generated, on or in the vicinity of, the site is fed directly to the building being assessed, by dedicated power supplies. Electricity which is surplus to the instantaneous demand of the building, may be fed back to the grid supply network.



## Management Performance: Ene 22 Energy audit



Credits

No Minimum Standard



Applicability: All projects

### Aim

To identify and implement cost-effective opportunities for energy savings.

### Question

Has an energy audit been carried out for the asset?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A	Question not answered
0	B	No energy audit has been carried out
2	C	Yes, an energy audit has been carried out
3	D	Yes, an energy audit has been carried out, and all measures with a payback time of 5 years or less have been implemented.
4	E	Yes, an energy audit has been carried out, and all measures with a payback time of 10 years or less have been implemented.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable answer
1.	The energy audit is not older than four years.	All
2.	The energy audit and improvement measures identified specifically relate to the assessed asset.	All
3.	The energy audit has been carried out in accordance with ISO 50002:2014, or equivalent.	All

## Methodology

### Energy audit

As a minimum the energy audit should:

- Be based on up-to-date, measured, traceable operational data on energy consumption and (for electricity) load profiles
- Comprise a detailed review of the energy consumption profile of the asset
- Be based on Simple Payback Periods (SPP) or instead use life cycle cost analysis (LCCA) to take account of long-term savings, residual values of long-term investments and discounts rates;
- Be proportionate, and sufficiently representative to permit the drawing of a reliable picture of overall energy performance and the reliable identification of most significant opportunities for improvement.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	Energy audit report including recommendations for energy efficiency improvement measures
2	Detailed and validated calculations of the payback periods for the improvement measures identified in the energy audit.
2	Photographic proof or documentation to demonstrate that measures which achieve the relevant payback periods have been implemented.
3	Documentation which demonstrates the standards, procedures or guidance that the energy audit complies with.

## Definitions

### Energy audit:

A systematic procedure for obtaining sufficient knowledge about the energy consumption of an asset, to identify and quantify cost-effective energy saving opportunities, and report the findings.



## Management Performance: Ene 23 Energy consumption reporting



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Apartment buildings only

### Aim

To minimise operational energy consumption and the associated carbon emissions by encouraging measurement against energy performance targets and by increasing the awareness and understanding of energy consumption amongst building managers and users.

### Question

What happens to asset energy consumption data?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered.
0	B.	Asset energy consumption data not collected.
2	C.	Asset energy consumption data collected and compared against asset targets.
3	D.	Asset energy consumption data collected and compared against asset targets and reported on internally.
4	E.	Asset energy consumption data collected and compared against asset targets and reported on internally and published in an annual public report.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where privacy laws prevent collection of resident's data the Asset energy consumption will be for the communal areas only	All
2.	Answer option D has been selected in Man 04 Environmental policies and procedures and all criteria for Man 04 have been met.	C - E
3.	Asset energy consumption should be monitored, targeted and reported to the appropriate level within the building management's organisational structure	C - E

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Records of energy consumption analysis, such as spread sheets, summary reports etc.
All	Copies of documents showing energy consumption and analysis that have been reported internally.
All	Copies of documents showing energy consumption and analysis that have been reported publicly.
2	Total energy consumption should be reported by meaningful segmentation, for example by portfolio, fund, geographic location, or asset type.



## Management Performance: Ene 24 Reduction of carbon emissions



\*Exemplary Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Apartment buildings only

### Aim

To recognise reductions in operational energy consumption of the common areas and the associated carbon emissions achieved.

### Question

What has been the average annual reduction in CO<sub>2</sub> emissions of the common areas of the asset over the last 3 years?

Exemplary Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
1	A.	≥5%
2	B.	≥10%
3	C.	≥15%

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Assets that have not previously certified with BREEAM In-Use will need to provide annual energy consumption data for year 3 prior to the current assessment.  For assets that have previously been certified in BREEAM In-Use energy consumption data entry is not required and the number of credits will be calculated automatically.	A - C
2.	If the mix of asset subtypes differs between the two reporting periods the asset subtype mix for the earlier reporting period will need to be entered.	A - C
3.	Assessors must ensure that the reporting period for each energy source is between 11 – 13 months (334 to 397 days) and that the maximum time gap between the earliest start date and the latest end date across all fuels must be no greater than 14 months (428 days).	A - C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	This applies to both the current and the previous reporting periods	
4.	For all energy sources, please ensure that consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as GIA under Asset Dimensions.	A - C
5.	Consumption data for all energy sources used in the asset must be entered. If the asset uses an energy source that is not listed, please contact BRE for guidance on how to account for this.	A - C
6.	Where the Energy Allocation method employed it must be used for both reporting periods	A - C

## Methodology

### Calculating carbon reduction

For assets where energy consumption data for the previous reporting period has not been entered into the BREEAM In-Use platform, energy consumption data will need to be entered. The data requirements and methodology are the same as for the current reporting period and are described in Ene 19 - Ene 21.

Where energy consumption data has been entered for the previous reporting period this will be automatically extracted from the BREEAM In-Use online platform.

The calculation compares the difference in annual carbon emissions between two reporting periods 3-years apart (i.e. 2016 and 2019 for 2019 assessments). The carbon emissions are calculated based on the annual energy consumption data for the two reporting periods using the current (i.e. 2019) BREEAM CO<sub>2</sub> emission factors. This means the carbon improvement of the asset and exclude the impact of external factors such as decarbonisation of the electricity grid. Therefore, the carbon emissions per m<sup>2</sup> will be calculated using the BREEAM In-Use V6.0.0 CO<sub>2</sub> emission factors.

The carbon improvement calculation also takes account of changes in the mix of asset subtypes within the asset between the two reporting periods by measuring the performance improvement relative to the benchmark for the relevant asset subtype. Fuel specific guidance is provided in Table 30 under Ene 19 Energy consumption issue.

### Reporting period

The intention is that the user enters energy consumption data based on a 365-day reporting period; for both years. However, it is possible to enter data for any reporting period between 11 and 13 months. Any reporting period outside of the 11 to 13-month range would be invalid and result in zero credits being scored.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Calculations based on inventory data.

Criteria	Evidence requirement
All	Copies of energy bills or verified meter readings/ photographic evidence of meters for the beginning and end of the reporting period.



## Management Performance: Water



### Summary

This category encourages sustainable water use throughout the operation of the asset and associated site. This ensures that the asset is set up to reduce the use of potable water (both internally and externally) over the lifetime of the building. This includes minimising losses through leakage.

### Context

Due to increasing population densities and high levels of water consumption, globally there are water shortages which are only likely to get worse over time, with water demand projected to increase by 55% between 2000 and 2050<sup>2</sup>. Additionally, the energy required for the extraction, purification, delivery, heating/cooling treatment and disposal of water (and wastewater) contributes to climate change and air quality issues. Reducing water consumption by increasing efficient use is, therefore, crucial to try and guarantee enough supply to meet the future demand and address climate change.

Sub-metering water means that consumption can be managed and monitored properly. Highly-consuming elements can be identified, with the aim of encouraging the reduction in water use where practical. Moreover, changes in consumption can be identified and dealt with as appropriate, thereby minimising risks of systems failures which can have costly and disruptive consequences.

## Issues

### Wat 11 Water consumption

4 credits

**Aim:**

To ensure management are aware of annual consumption from utility-supplied water sources.

**Value:**

Increase awareness of water usage within the building.

Reduces costs related to water consumption.

### Wat 12 Water recycling

2 credits

**Aim:**

To encourage the use of alternative water supplies in order to reduce the demand for utility-supplied fresh water.

**Value:**

Reduces potable water use in high-consumption elements and equipment, as well as the associated energy consumption.

Promotes innovation and manufacture of more water efficient equipment.

### Wat 13 Water consumption reporting

2 credits

**Aim:**

To facilitate the structured and systematic provision of reporting on water consumption to encourage building users to understand and set efficiency improvement targets.

**Value:**

Ensures water usage is managed to maximise efficiency and sustainability.

Minimises damage, costs and disruption arising from water leaks.

### Wat 14 Water strategy

6 credits

**Aim:**

To promote reduced utility-supplied water consumption through encouraging strategies that focus on water-efficiency and reduction of wastage.

**Value:**

Identifies and monitors large water uses and changed consumption levels to improve management and maintenance as well as to encourage reductions in unnecessary consumption.

Increases awareness of water usage within the building.



## Management Performance: Wat 11 Water consumption



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** Answers A applies to Apartments only, Answer B applies to All projects

### Aim

To ensure management are aware of annual consumption from utility-supplied water sources.

### Question

What is the asset's annual water consumption from utility-supplied water?

Credits	Answer	Enter volume in m <sup>3</sup>
0	A.	Question not answered
2	B.	Consumption of common areas
2	C.	Consumption of homes

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there is no water consumption in common areas this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	The annual water consumption should include the sum of the utility-supplied water drawn into the asset. This includes water consumption for any use over the course of the reporting period.	All
3.	Any consumption data submitted must be in accordance with Validity of consumption data guidance stated in the Methodology below.	All

### Methodology

#### Validity of consumption data

In order to maintain the reliability of data entered into the BREEAM In-Use Online Platform, any consumption-related data submitted must have a reporting period start date which is no more than one year prior to the start of the assessment (creation of a measurement).

For example, if the assessment was started on the 3rd of January 2020, the reporting period start date cannot be prior to 3rd of January 2019. A more recent period can always be entered, as long as the Assessor can verify that the data is correct for the period entered.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Copies of water bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.

## Definitions

### **Utility-supplied water:**

Water that has been provided by an organisation that supplies a public service under regulation by the government (e.g. mains water).



## Management Performance: Wat 12 Water recycling



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To encourage the use of alternative water supplies in order to reduce the demand for utility supplied fresh water.

### Question

What is the asset's annual water consumption from alternative supplies?

Credits	Answer	Enter volume in m <sup>3</sup>
*	A.	Question not answered
*	B.	m <sup>3</sup>

\*See Methodology

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Answer option B or C has been answered in Wat 11 Water consumption has been answered and all Assessment Criteria for the issue have been met.	All
2.	The consumption data for the alternative supplies must be over the same reporting period and floor area as Wat 11	All
3.	Alternative water supplies include water that is both treated and untreated prior to reuse.	All
4.	Rainwater, blackwater and greywater can be considered as alternative water supplies.	All
5.	Other water sources can be used to meet the aim of the credit as long as the alternative water supply is used to reduce demand of utility-supplied water for unregulated water uses.	All

## Methodology

### Credit allocation

Credits for this issue will be allocated based on the proportion of water consumption from alternative supplies compared with the total water consumed in the asset annually, provided in Wat 11 Water consumption. The percentage of the asset's total water consumption that is provided from alternative supplies will be calculated and the number of credits awarded as follows:

Table 31: Allocation of credits

Percentage of consumption from alternative supplies	Credits
<5%	0
≥ 5% to <15%	1
≥ 15%	2

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Verified meter readings for the alternative supplies.
All	Provision of robust estimates for annual water consumption from alternative supplies, if metered data/meter readings cannot be provided.

## Definitions

### Blackwater:

Wastewater that has been discharged from kitchen and utility sinks, urinals and toilets within the asset.

### Greywater

Water that has been discharged from all sources other than kitchen and sewage within the asset.

### Utility-supplied water

Water that has been provided by an organisation that supplies a public service under regulation by the government (e.g. mains water).



## Management Performance: Wat 13 Water consumption reporting



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To facilitate the structured and systematic provision of reporting on water consumption to encourage building users to understand and set efficiency improvement targets.

### Question

How is the collected water consumption data used?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	Filed away
2	C.	Compared against previous performance and reported on internally

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where privacy laws prevent monitoring of water consumption this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	Answer option D has been selected in Man 04 Environmental policies and procedures and all criteria for the issue have been met.	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Records of water consumption analysis, such as spread sheets, summary reports etc
All	Copies of how water consumption and analysis have been reported internally.



## Management Performance: Wat 14 Water strategy



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To promote reduced utility-supplied water consumption through encouraging strategies that focus on water-efficiency and reduction of wastage.

### Question

Is there a water strategy in place?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer from A - C. Where C is selected tick all responses from D - E that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes
2	D.	The water strategy includes replacing water appliances and fittings with low water use equivalents during refurbishment
2	E.	The water strategy includes a proactive maintenance policy for installed water systems

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>As a minimum, the replacement section of the strategy should include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) A replacement programme which replaces high water consuming equipment with low water consuming equivalents</li> <li>b) A schedule of approved replacement appliances. The appliances listed in this schedule should be easy to identify to be of low water use by relevant labelling.</li> </ul>	D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	If all water appliances and fittings have already been replaced with low water use equivalents, a strategy should still be in place to ensure a continuation of good practice.	D, E
3.	The strategy must have senior management approval.	C - E

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	The strategy document with relevant sections highlighted
2	Maintenance logs
3	Evidence of monitoring data

## Definitions

### Proactive maintenance policy:

A maintenance strategy to ensure that the reliability of the installed fittings and water systems is increased. These maintenance policies typically consist of two parts:

- a) **Preventive maintenance:** maintenance, measurements, tests, parts replacement, etc. to prevent faults from occurring.
- b) **Predictive maintenance:** techniques that are designed to help determine the condition of installed equipment in order to predict when maintenance should occur.

### Utility-supplied water:

Water that has been provided by an organisation that supplies a public service under regulation by the government (e.g. mains water).



## Management Performance: Resources



### Summary

This category encourages the responsible and circular use of physical resources in the asset to increase value and sustainability performance in operation and at the end of life. This is achieved by encouraging the asset owner to integrate sustainability considerations into the procurement of construction products (used for maintenance), operational consumables and equipment. In addition, more circular use of waste resources generated during the use of the asset is facilitated by rewarding data gathering, target setting and engagement with asset users. This is to maximise the repurposing of waste stream resources where appropriate for other uses.

### Context

The operational phase of an asset life cycle is a very significant consumer of resources and sources of waste at the end of useful life. Many key resources are non-renewable and are becoming more and more scarce, more costly and riskier to extract. Furthermore, the supply-chain extraction and processing activity required to create products, particularly from raw materials, frequently leads to social and environmental degradation. It is essential that the real estate sector does all it can to address these challenges by using existing assets for as long as possible; maintaining or increasing the value of the resources they contain; enabling the reuse or recycling of resources in existing assets; facilitating occupants to maximise the reuse and recycling of their waste; minimising resource use overall; choosing reused or recycled resources instead of virgin materials; and using resources that cause less harm to society and the environment.

## Issues

<b>Rsc 05</b>	<b>Sustainable procurement</b>	<b>8 credits</b> <b>+ 1 Exemplary</b>
---------------	--------------------------------	--

**Aim:**

To recognise and encourage the procurement of more sustainable products and services.

**Value:**

Promotes more economically, socially and environmentally responsible practices across the construction products, component manufacturing and supply sectors.

Encourages the construction industry to identify risks and reduce the environmental, economic and social issues in the supply chain of construction products.

Encourages the use and the improvement of credible and comparable schemes to evaluate the responsible sourcing of products.

Promotes more economically, socially and environmentally responsible practices across the consumable products and equipment supply sectors.

Encourages consideration of circular economy principles during procurement.

Encourages the use of environmental management systems during procurement.

<b>Rsc 06</b>	<b>Optimising resource use, reuse and recycling</b>	<b>6 credits</b>
---------------	---	------------------

**Aim:**

To reduce resource consumption and facilitate the reuse, repurposing and recycling of waste resources from the asset.

**Value:**

Helps meet corporate and statutory waste recycling targets.

Reduces environmental impacts and costs arising from the disposal of waste.

Increases the quantity and quality of data on waste to inform waste reduction, reuse, recycling, target setting and measuring performance against targets.

Increases cooperation between the asset users and improve awareness of the impact of waste and how to improve.

Enables the realisation of circular economy principles during the operation of the asset.



## Management Performance: Rsc 05 Sustainable procurement



Credits

Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the procurement of more sustainable products and services.

### Question

Is a sustainable procurement plan used?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply. F or G must also be selected for any credits to be achieved in this issue.
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No sustainable procurement plan is used.
0	C.	The organisation managing the asset has a procurement policy that requires all timber (and timber based) products used during the management of the asset to be legally harvested and traded.
2	D.	A sustainable procurement plan is used for maintenance, repair, replacement and refurbishment works to the asset.
2	E.	A sustainable procurement plan is used for procurement of consumables and equipment.

What organisations use the sustainable procurement plan(s)?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply (if D or E have been selected above). F or G must be selected for any credits to be achieved in this issue.
2	F.	The sustainable procurement plan is used for direct procurement by the organisation managing the asset.
2	G.	The organisation managing the asset requires the use of the sustainable procurement plan for procurement by its contractors who undertake work on the asset.  Or, the sustainable procurement plan requirements are covered by the contractor's own procurement policies/plan.

Credits	Answer	<b>Select all answers that apply (if D or E have been selected above). F or G must be selected for any credits to be achieved in this issue.</b>
Exemplary	H.	The organisation managing the asset has a third party certified environmental management system (EMS) to ISO 14001:2015 (or another type of certification/assurance that is accepted nationally as an acceptable alternative). The sustainable procurement plan is coordinated with the EMS.

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	Answer option C of this issue has been selected and all relevant criteria have been met.	D - H
2.	<p>The senior management of the organisation managing the asset shall endorse the timber procurement policy and require it to be used during the management of the asset. The policy shall be used for direct procurement by the organisation managing the asset and by its contractors who undertake work on the asset.</p> <p>The timber procurement policy may form part of a sustainable procurement plan.</p>	C
3.	<p>For all products, the sustainable procurement plan shall give preference to products that can robustly demonstrate the optimum combination of the following: -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) have ISO 14024 (type I) compliant ecolabel certification;</li> <li>b) have ISO 14025 (type III) compliant ecolabel certification;</li> <li>c) have nationally recognised ethical/responsible sourcing 3rd party certification;</li> <li>d) generate less waste during use/installation;</li> <li>e) after use on the asset, are more readily reusable;</li> <li>f) are accepted by local recycling collection services.</li> <li>g) can be sourced locally.</li> <li>h) are from reused (preferred) or recycled sources.</li> <li>i) Utilise circular economy principles e.g. servitisation, manufacturer take-back, material passports.</li> </ul> <p>For timber (and timber based) products, the sustainable procurement plan shall give preference to products that can robustly demonstrate one of the following: -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) FSC certification,</li> <li>b) PEFC certification,</li> <li>c) SFI certification,</li> </ul>	D - H

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	d) another type of certification/assurance that is accepted nationally as an acceptable alternative to at least one of the above.	
4.	<p>The sustainable procurement plan shall provide guidance on sourcing products that can demonstrate the items listed in criteria 3.</p> <p>The sustainable procurement plan shall provide guidance on how to choose between two or more products under consideration where each product demonstrates a different combination of the items listed in criteria 3.</p>	D - H
5.	<p>For services, the sustainable procurement plan shall give preference to, and provide sourcing guidance on, supplier organisations that have a 3rd party certified environmental management system to ISO 14001:2015 (or another type of certification/assurance that is accepted nationally as an acceptable alternative).</p>	D - H
6.	<p>The sustainable procurement plan shall include sustainability aims, objectives and strategic targets to guide procurement activities.</p>	D - H
7.	<p>The sustainable procurement plan shall include details of procedures to check and verify the effective implementation of the sustainable procurement plan.</p> <p>The senior management of the organisation managing the asset shall review and endorse annual targets for increasing sustainable procurement.</p>	D - H
8.	<p>If the sustainable procurement plan is applied to several sites or adopted at an organisational level it must identify the risks and opportunities of procurement against a broad range of social, environmental and economic issues following the process set out in ISO 20400:2017.</p>	D - H
9.	<p>The senior management of the organisation managing the asset shall endorse the sustainable procurement plan and require it to be used during the management of the asset.</p>	D - H
10.	<p>Exemplary level credits:</p> <p>Answer option H can only be selected if options F and G have been selected.</p>	H

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	<p>The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance</p>
2	<p>A copy of the timber procurement policy used by the organisation managing the asset and by contractors who undertake work on the asset.</p>

Criteria	Evidence requirement
3 – 9	A copy of the organisation managing the asset's sustainable procurement plan with the relevant sections identified according to each question answer and criterion.
7	An acknowledgement OR meeting minutes showing senior management have reviewed and endorsed the targets. Documentation showing the names and positions of senior management.
8	Confirmation by the organisation managing the asset that the sustainable procurement plan is/is not applied to several sites or adopted at an organisational level.
9	A written endorsement of the sustainable procurement plan by the senior management of the organisation managing the asset. Documentation showing the names and positions of senior management.
All	Where a contractor's policies/plans are relied upon by the organisation managing the asset (see answers G and H), the same evidence requirements above apply to contractor's policies/plans.

## Definitions

**Consumables and equipment:**

Products that are used for the normal functioning of the asset e.g. security, janitorial and reception related stationery, IT equipment and office furniture; cleaning products; waste and recycling bins; lightbulbs; filters.

**Contractors who undertake work at the asset:**

Organisations that are contracted by the organisation managing the asset to provide a service at the asset (e.g. cleaning, construction work, gardening, security).

**Legally harvested and traded timber:**

Legally harvested timber (and timber based) products originate from a forest where the following criteria are met:

- a) The forest owner or manager holds legal use rights to the forest
- b) There is compliance by both the forest management organisation and any contractors with local and national legal criteria including those relevant to:
  - i. Forest management
  - ii. Environment
  - iii. Labour and welfare
  - iv. Health and safety
  - v. Other parties' tenure and use rights
  - vi. All relevant royalties and taxes are paid.
- c) There is full compliance with the criteria of CITES.

And legally traded timber (and timber based) products are: -

- d) Exported in compliance with exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.

- e) Imported in compliance with importing country laws governing the import of timber and timber products, including payment of any import taxes, duties, or levies.
- f) Traded in compliance with legislation related to the convention on international trade in endangered species (CITES) where applicable.



## Management Performance: Rsc 06 Optimising resource use, reuse and recycling



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To reduce resource consumption and facilitate the reuse, repurposing and recycling of waste resources from the asset.

### Question

Is data gathered and recorded on the waste generated during management of the asset?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes

Is the reduction, reuse and recycling of waste from the asset being optimised through target setting and encouraging resident participation?

Credits	Answer	If option C has been selected, select all the responses from D to G that apply. Select either E or F
1	D.	Targets have been set for reducing waste generated from the asset and increasing reuse and recycling of waste from the asset.
1	E.	Data is recorded on the waste generated by the residents based on estimates from spot checks.
2	F.	Data is recorded on the waste generated by the residents.
1	G.	The organisation managing the asset actively encourages reuse and recycling participation by residents.

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p>Waste generated during management of the asset may be recorded in combination with waste from residents if separate data is not available. Where waste from residents is not collected communally this source of waste may be excluded.</p>	E - F
2.	<p>Spot checks shall be undertaken by the organisation managing the asset to estimate the total quantity</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) at least every 4 months and avoiding periods that are unlikely to be representative (e.g. not during holiday periods).</li> <li>b) The number of waste containers checked shall be chosen to be reasonably representative of the whole</li> <li>c) The method used to extrapolate the spot-checked results to the estimated whole quantity and converted to the units used for criterion 3 shall be robust and made available with the results</li> </ul>	E
3.	<p>The data shall be recorded in the BREEAM In-Use Rsc 06 Waste data reporting tool according to the Methodology and Table 32 in Checklists and tables. The tool can be accessed through the BREEAM In-Use Assessor extranet or the BREEAM In-Use online platform</p>	C, E, F
4.	<p>The data shall be presented annually to the senior management of the organisation managing the asset.</p>	C, E, F
5.	<p>The senior management of the organisation managing the asset shall review and endorse annual targets for reducing waste generated from the asset and increasing reuse and recycling of waste from the asset.</p>	D
6.	<p>The organisation managing the asset communicates the following to the residents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) The waste hierarchy and other relevant background information on waste</li> <li>b) How and why recording waste from the asset is being done</li> <li>c) The quantities and types of waste produced by the asset</li> <li>d) The sustainability benefits of reusing and recycling waste from the asset</li> <li>e) Relevant examples/case studies from other assets</li> <li>f) The facilities provided for reuse and recycling</li> <li>g) How residents can obtain more information and guidance.</li> </ul>	G

## Methodology

### Waste collection requirements

The total mass or volume of waste generated from the asset shall be recorded annually by waste stream. The following data shall be recorded for each separate waste stream:

- Waste description
- Waste classification (including identification of hazardous waste)
- Quantity of waste generated
- Source of waste
- Disposal route

Either mass (tonnes) or volume (m<sup>3</sup>) may be used, but the chosen unit shall be used consistently for all data gathered for the asset. Please note that if the data is to be reported to other organisations (e.g. industry benchmarking organisations) care should be taken to ensure the unit used is compatible.

## Checklists and Tables

Table 32: Waste recording requirements

Input	Input type	Input options	Description
Waste description (optional)	Text	N/A	Description of waste generated by asset.
Waste code	List selection	- European Waste Catalogue - Other classification system	Waste classification code for each waste stream generated by the asset.
Hazardous waste classification	List selection	Yes/No	Identification of hazardous waste.
Quantity	Number	N/A	The quantity of waste generated by the asset. Reported as either mass (tonnes) or volume (m <sup>3</sup> ).
Source	List selection	- Asset management - Occupant(s)  - Unknown (or combined asset management and occupant)	The source of waste.

Source activity	List selection	- Construction activities - Non-construction activities	The source activity.
Disposal route	List selection	- Diverted – reuse – at the asset (or stored for reuse at the asset)  - Diverted – reuse – not at the asset  - Diverted – recycling – at the asset  - Diverted – recycling – closed-loop  - Diverted – recycling – not closed-loop/unknown  - Diverted – waste to energy  - Incineration  - Landfill	The destination of the waste generated by the asset.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1 - 3	Data on waste generated during management, and by residents, should be correctly collected in the BREEAM In-Use Rsc 06 Waste data reporting tool and submitted into the BREEAM In-Use online platform. This includes evidence of the organisation/individual that collected the data provided and the source of the data.
4	A copy of the document/presentation presented  An acknowledgement from the senior management that it was received OR meeting minutes showing the senior management were presented with the data.  Documentation showing the names and positions of senior management.
5	A copy of the document containing the targets  An acknowledgement OR meeting minutes showing the senior management have reviewed and endorsed the targets.  Documentation showing the names and positions of senior management.
6	A copy of the information provided to residents.

## Definitions

### **Closed-loop recycling:**

Where waste is recycled back into the same product that the waste came from as opposed to open-loop recycling where it is recycled into a different product often of lower value (sometimes called downcycling). Closed-loop recycling may be achieved by, for example, a product manufacturer take-back scheme.

### **Hazardous waste:**

Waste classified as hazardous by the nationally applicable waste classification system (e.g., in the E.U., the Hazardous Waste List (HWL) of the European List of Waste (LoW)).

### **Waste classification:**

According to the nationally applicable waste classification system (e.g. in the E.U., the European List of Waste (LoW) codes shall be used).



## Management Performance: Resilience



### Summary

The resilience category considers asset exposure to a range of risks such as climate-related physical risks, local watercourse pollution, excess material damage and physical security. The category then encourages the pro-active management of these risks to minimise their impact and ensure rapid recovery if there has been exposure to these related impacts.

### Context

#### Natural hazards, fires and other emergencies

All buildings are exposed to a range of natural and man-made hazards. These can damage the assets and impact on the residents significantly. By understanding hazards that a building is exposed to, good management practice can be implemented to minimise impacts, ensure that the asset quickly recovers to 'business as usual'.

#### Climate-related physical and transition risks

The physical risks that assets are exposed to will change due to the impact of climate change. Some of these changes will be chronic, such as sea level rise, other acute, such as heat waves or increase severity and frequency extreme weather events. Understanding how these risks are likely to change in future allow time to mitigate these risks and time to develop plans to recover from future emergencies.

As society changes, or is forced to change, to a low carbon economy there will be new risks and opportunity during this transmission. Understanding these transition risks allows time for more gradual, therefore often cheaper, adaptation. Investors are increasingly demanding to understand more about how assets and the portfolios which they belong are assessing the physical risks from climate change and taking action to address them to protect asset value. The driving force behind this is the Taskforce on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD). The TCFD is a global voluntary disclosure framework launched in June 2017 to allow organisations to identify the climate risks and opportunities they expect to face and to encourage the disclosure of those financial impacts to investors.

#### Security

Feelings of safety and security are essential to healthy and productive asset occupants. Freedom from crime and the fear of crime has a major impact on quality of life, and therefore effects the well-being of building occupants.

Security risks are dependent on the context of a building and, as a result, need to be specifically determined based against a number of variables, including function and location. In addition to this, security risks are not static and can change over time. Consequently, security advice from the appropriate professionals is essential in determining the necessary security measures for any asset. Assets should consider how their approach to crime prevention and security may result in inequitable and exclusionary outcomes and solutions. Assets are encouraged to adopt policies and procedures that not only protect building users but contribute to the dignity, safety and security of all people and the wider neighbourhood.

## Issues

<b>Rsl 06</b>	<b>Emergency plans and climate related physical risks</b>	<b>6 credits</b>
		<b>+ 2 Exemplary</b>

**Aim:**

To encourage emergency plans that go beyond statutory requirements and aim to protect property and the environment in addition to people. To recognise and encourage assessment of an asset's exposure to climate related physical risks and their impact on asset value.

**Value:**

Ensures that the impact of any emergencies will be minimised.

Seeks to keep occupants, and surrounding communities, safe during incidents.

Seeks to protect physical asset and operational value.

<b>Rsl 07</b>	<b>Climate related transition risks and opportunities</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
---------------	---	------------------

**Aim:**

To recognise and encourage the assessment of the asset's exposure to climate-related transition risks and opportunities.

**Value:**

Ensures that the impact of moving to a low carbon economy is minimised.

Reduces the risk of assets becoming stranded and losing value.

Highlights opportunities for the asset during the transition to a low carbon economy.

<b>Rsl 08</b>	<b>Social risks and opportunities</b>	<b>2 credits</b>
---------------	---------------------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To recognise and encourage the assessment of the asset's exposure to social risks and opportunities.

**Value:**

Ensures that the social impacts of climate change are understood for the asset.

Highlights how the asset might maximise the social opportunities of climate change.

<b>Rsl 09</b>	<b>Fire risk management</b>	<b>4 credits</b>
---------------	-----------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To ensure a consistent baseline of fire risk assessment.

**Value:**

Ensures that the fire risk to the asset is understood and reduced, potentially saving lives.

Seeks to protect physical asset and operational value.

**Rsl 10 Security risk assessment****2 credits****+ 1 Exemplary****Aim:**

To ensure all property related security issues are identified by a suitable third-party organisation and addressed in order to reduce risks from crime.

**Value:**

Reduces the risk of crime and potentially insurance costs.

Increases the value of the building to residents.

Seeks to protect the physical asset and the residents.



## Management Performance: Rsl 06 Emergency plans and climate-related physical risks



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To encourage emergency plans that go beyond statutory requirements and aim to protect property and the environment in addition to people. To recognise and encourage assessment of an asset's exposure to climate related physical risks and their impact on asset value.

### Question

What is included within the scope of the Emergency plans?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
2	B.	The emergency plan includes protection of property
2	C.	The emergency plan includes environmental impacts
Exemplary	D.	The plans must detail how the asset provides a community space for emergencies and how this is coordinated with the community.

Has the asset been assessed for climate-related physical risks?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	E.	Question not answered
0	F.	No
2	G.	Yes
Exemplary	H.	Yes, and the risks posed to the asset value and the community have been identified.

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	The emergency plan includes a coherent emergency strategy for all relevant natural hazards for the time period specified.	B - D
2.	Emergency plans have been delegated to relevant individuals within the organisation.	B - D
3.	The emergency plans are available to all residents with the asset.	B - D
4.	The level of detail required will depend on the risks that the site is exposed to and the complexity of mitigating those risks.	B - D
5.	<p>Community spaces for emergencies will vary depending on the needs of the community surrounding the asset, the existing community spaces and the types of emergency that might occur.</p> <p>Examples of community spaces include: -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• emergency shelters</li> <li>• cooling centres for heat waves</li> <li>• kitchen spaces</li> <li>• meeting space</li> </ul>	D
6.	The assessment of climate-related physical risks should cover both Acute and Chronic risks	G - H
7.	The assessment was carried out by a competent person or organisation, preferably third-party to the asset owner or manager within the last five years.	G - H

## Evidence

Criterion	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1 - 3	A copy of risk assessment on which the emergency plan is based and a copy of the emergency plan with sections which relate to the protection of property and environmental impacts
5	Evidence of coordination with civic or other community leaders to offer the community space, communications within the community about the space available and how it can be utilized in the case of an emergency.
6 - 7	The report detailing the climate related physical risks and opportunities identified, the methodology used for the assessment and the key metrics where applicable.

Criterion	Evidence requirement
6 - 7	Evidence of the competency of the individual(s) or organisation that undertook the assessment.

## Definitions

### Competent individual:

An individual (or individuals) with relevant technical and professional experience suitable to:

- a) Determine the potential for natural hazards in the region of the development
- b) Determine the likely impacts on the site, building and locality
- c) Subsequently identify appropriate mitigation measures This (or these) individual(s) should practice to and abide by a professional code of conduct or similar.

### Natural hazards:

Natural processes or phenomena occurring in the air, or on or in the ground that may constitute a damaging event. The list below is not intended to be exhaustive but provides an indication of the type of hazards that should be considered to meet the definition. Other natural hazards may be relevant under this issue.

Relevance will be dependent on local geography, geology, hydrology and climate factors and the Assessor should be satisfied that appropriate local expertise has been sought by the client to identify these fully:

- a) Floods
- b) Natural disasters of geological origin such as volcanic eruptions, earthquakes, landslides, tsunamis and tidal waves
- c) Natural disasters of climatic or meteorological origin such as droughts, avalanches, wave surges, and windstorms including cyclones, hurricanes, tornadoes, tropical storms, and typhoons
- d) Wildfires

### Climate-Related Physical Risks:

The physical risks of climate change are risks resulting from events, such as extreme weather (hurricanes, floods, extreme heat), as well as longer-term shifts in climate patterns. Physical risks from climate change can be either acute, such as increased severity of extreme weather events, or chronic such as sea level rise or chronic heat waves.

## Additional information

### Emergency planning and protecting the environment

Emergency plans may introduce solutions that may cause environmental pollution when deployed, potentially putting the health and lives of humans, flora and fauna at risk. For example, the water sprayed onto a building to douse a fire may contain chemicals and toxins. Assets should consider what impacts those solutions might have on the environment before including them in their plan.

### Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD)

The Financial Stability Board Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD) is a market-driven initiative that have developed and published a set of recommendations for voluntary and consistent climate-related financial risk disclosures in mainstream filings. This guidance provides companies with guidance on what kind of information to provide to investors, lenders, insurers, and other stakeholders on climate-related risks. Further information can be found at: <https://www.fsb-tcfd.org/>. The final recommendations of the Task Force can be found at: <https://www.fsb-tcfd.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/06/FINAL-TCFD-Report-062817.pdf>

## Management Performance:



### Rsl 07 Climate-related transition risks and opportunities



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

#### Aim

To recognise and encourage the assessment of the asset's exposure to climate-related transition risks and opportunities.

#### Question

Has the asset been assessed for exposure to climate-related transition risks and opportunities through a risk assessment process?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, the asset has been assessed for climate-related transition risks and opportunities
4	D.	Yes, the asset has been assessed for climate-related transition risks and opportunities and has externally disclosed the metrics used by the asset to assess these risks and opportunities.

#### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	The process for assessing transition risks and opportunities should evaluate one or more risks to the following areas: asset value, tenants, communities (with particular attention paid to underserved populations), continuity of operations, individuals working with or for the asset.	C, D
2.	The assessment was carried out by a suitably qualified person or organisation, preferably third-party to the asset owner or manager within the last five years.	C, D
3.	Metrics should include energy, water, land use and waste management where relevant and applicable.	D

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1, 3	The report detailing the transition risks and opportunities identified, the methodology used for the assessment and the key metrics where applicable.
2	Evidence of the competency of the individual(s) or organisation that undertook the assessment
3	Evidence of how the metrics have been externally disclosed.

## Definitions

### Suitably qualified person or organisation:

A person or organisation that has sufficient knowledge, training and experience to assess an asset's climate-related risks and opportunities.

### Transition risks and opportunities:

Risks and opportunities related to the transition to a lower-carbon economy. These may include policy, legal, technology and market changes to address mitigation and adaptation requirements related to climate change. Examples include policy that requires reduction of carbon emissions from assets, resource efficiency and lower emission and more resilient energy sources.

## Additional information

### Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD)

The Financial Stability Board Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD) is a market-driven initiative that have developed and published a set of recommendations for voluntary and consistent climate-related financial risk disclosures in mainstream filings. This guidance provides companies with guidance on what kind of information to provide to investors, lenders, insurers, and other stakeholders on climate-related risks. Further information can be found at : <https://www.fsb-tcfd.org/>

The final recommendations of the Task Force can be found at:

<https://www.fsb-tcfd.org/wp-content/uploads/2017/06/FINAL-TCFD-Report-062817.pdf>



## Management Performance: Rsl 08 Social risks and opportunities



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To recognise and encourage the assessment of the asset's exposure to social risks and opportunities.

### Question

Has the asset been assessed for exposure to social risks and opportunities through a risk assessment process?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes, the asset has been assessed for social risks and opportunities.
2	D.	Yes, the asset has been assessed for social risks and opportunities and has externally disclosed the metrics used by the asset to assess these risks and opportunities.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	The process for assessing social risks and opportunities should evaluate the impacts to and from the community and interdependent infrastructure deemed to be material to the asset. Particular attention should be given to underrepresented groups detailing how impacts to the assets may cascade outwards to potentially impact these groups. The assessment should encourage outcomes that contribute to enhancing the community's overall resilience.	C, D
2.	The assessment was carried out by a suitably qualified person or organisation, preferably third-party to the asset owner or manager within the last five years.	C, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
3.	Metrics should address both the social risks and opportunities that are relevant and applicable to the asset.	D

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1, 3	The report detailing the social risks and opportunities identified, the methodology used for the assessment and the key metrics where applicable.
2	Evidence of the competency of the individual(s) or organisation that undertook the assessment

## Definitions

### Interdependent infrastructure assets and services:

Infrastructure assets and services on which the asset may rely on or require to be operational. Examples include energy networks and transport systems.

### Social risks and opportunities:

Risks and opportunities related to the impacts and interdependencies between the community and the asset. Social risks include:

- Social disruption: social instability, labour relations, community relations, etc
- Public health: acute or chronic disease, social and environmental determinants of health, etc
- Poverty: income inequality, workforce training and capabilities, etc.
- Modern slavery/forced labour

Physical risks, including those that are climate-related, can also be social risks. Rsl 06 Emergency plans and climate-related physical risks addresses the risks and opportunities for the asset users. Rsl 08 Social risks and opportunities addresses potentially similar risks and opportunities but from the perspective of the wider community, considering how an asset might add social value to this community.

Social opportunities include those that enhance and support the community's resilience. Examples include the asset providing a community space for emergencies (i.e. emergency shelter, kitchen space, community tool share program, meeting space, community radio station, community mesh network) and/or a cooling centre for heat waves.

### Suitably qualified person or organisation:

A person or organisation that has sufficient knowledge, training and experience to assess an asset's social risks and opportunities.



## Management Performance: Rsl 09 Fire risk management



Credits

Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To ensure a consistent baseline of fire risk assessment.

### Question

Does the asset comply with all relevant fire regulations that apply to the asset?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
0	C.	Yes, and the regulations do not include a requirement to conduct a fire risk assessment.
0	D.	Yes, and the regulations do include a requirement to conduct a fire risk assessment.

Where the relevant fire regulations do not include a requirement to conduct a fire risk assessment, has a fire risk assessment been carried out?

Credits	Answer	Answer H can be selected only if Answer G has been selected
0	E.	Question not answered
0	F.	No
2	G.	Yes, a fire risk assessment has been carried out.
2	H.	There is a fire safety manager or other member of staff in place who manages, monitors and initiates reviews of the relevant procedures as identified in the fire risk assessment.

## Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<p><b>Filtering</b></p> <p>Where the asset complies with all relevant fire regulations and the fire risk assessment required meets the requirement in Assessment criteria 2 – 5, the credits for the issue will be filtered out of the assessment.</p>	D
2.	The fire risk assessment must be carried out on premises that are in use so that actual working conditions, practices and procedures can be taken into account. Risk assessments carried out at the design stage of new premises or to identify defects in fire precautions in newly constructed premises prior to occupation are not compliant.	C, D, G
3.	A fire risk assessment must be carried out by a competent person.	C, D, G
4.	A fire risk assessment should include all of the assessed area, and any associated access routes. It must explicitly set out the significant findings of the assessment including identifying who is responsible for fire risk management, details about the building that are relevant to the fire risk prevention measures required and actions required	C, D, G
5.	<p>The fire risk assessment is clear that appropriate consideration has been given to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Fire hazards and means for their elimination or their control</li> <li>b) Maintenance of fire protection measures</li> <li>c) Relevant aspects of fire safety management</li> <li>d) The likelihood of fire and its likely consequences</li> <li>e) The fire risk</li> <li>f) The fire risk assessment results in action plan</li> </ul>	C, D, G
6.	Procedures as identified in the fire risk assessment must be reviewed at least every 3 years AND when changes are made to the building.	G, H

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	<p>Copy of most recent fire risk assessment, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Evidence of the competence of the person undertaking the fire risk assessment.</li> <li>• Evidence that the fire risk assessment has been reviewed within the last 3 years or whenever changes were made to the building, whichever is soonest.</li> </ul>

Criteria	Evidence requirement
4	Evidence of fire safety manager checking through documentation and recent examples.

## Definitions

**Competent person:**

A person with enough training and experience or knowledge and other qualities to enable them properly to assist in undertaking the preventative and protective measures. For more complex assessments, the necessary competency may not reside with a single individual, but will instead be provided by a team, including those with relevant local knowledge.

**Fire risk assessment:**

A fire risk assessment is a systemic and structured assessment of the fire risk in premises for the purpose of expressing the current level of fire risk, determining the adequacy of existing fire precautions and determining the need for, and nature of, any additional fire precautions. Additional fire precautions required are set out in the action plan which forms part of the documented fire risk assessment. The objective of the action plan is to set out measures that will ensure that the risk level is reduced to, or maintained at, a tolerable level. This ensures that the focus concentrates on fire prevention measures, instead of just fire protection measures.

## Additional information

**BREEAM's approach to fire risk assessment**

BREEAM's approach to fire risk assessment has been adapted from Publicly Available Specification 79 *Fire risk assessment – Guidance and a recommended methodology*, 2012 (PAS 79:2012). This approach to fire risk assessment tends to parallel that adopted in health and safety risk assessments, whereby the objective of the risk assessment is not merely preventing harm to people as a result of a hazard but begins with endeavours to eliminate or reduce the hazard itself.



## Management Performance: Rsl 10 Security risk assessment



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To ensure all property related security issues are identified by a suitable third-party organisation and addressed in order to reduce risks from crime.

### Question

Has a security risk assessment been carried out?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, a security risk assessment has been carried out
Exemplary	D.	A risk-based security rating scheme has been used. The performance against the scheme has been confirmed by independent assessment and verification.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	A competent person has documented a security risk assessment for the asset. The risk assessment describes the security controls deployed (if any) to manage the identified security risks, and a procedure for ensuring the risk assessment is kept up to date.	C
2.	The security controls described in the security risk assessment have been, or are scheduled to be, implemented. Security controls that are schedule to be implemented should be completed over a reasonable timescale.	C
3.	Independent assessment and verification (e.g. certification) of performance against a risk-based security rating scheme has been achieved.	D

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1, 2	Copy of the security risk assessment prepared by the competent person.
2	Photographic evidence and/or documentation to demonstrate the implementation of security controls.
3	Certification (or similar verification) to a recognised risk-based security rating scheme.

## Definitions

### Competent person:

The following are deemed to be appropriate

- 1) A SABRE Registered Professional meeting the criteria for 'Risk'. A current list of SABRE Registered Professionals can be found at [www.redbooklive.com](http://www.redbooklive.com).  
**AND / OR**
- 2) A practicing security consultant or security manager that meets the following requirements:
  - a) Minimum 3 years relevant experience in the last 5 years. The experience must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding of security risk assessment in the built environment.
  - b) Hold a suitable qualification relevant to security
  - c) Maintains full membership of a relevant professional body that has a professional code of conduct.

### Risk-based security rating scheme:

A security assessment method for buildings, led by an independent assessor, which grades security performance against a defined standard at design, shell and core, and post-construction stages. Through certification the system shall recognise and reward:

- Adoption of industry best practice, tools and standards,
- A systematic and risk-based approach to security,
- An appropriate and proportionate response to security needs,
- Innovation in security risk assessment
- Engagement of competent persons for the process of identifying security needs, security planning and design, and the implementation of security controls.

The following program is currently recognised as a compliant risk-based security rating schemes:

- SABRE (<https://www.bregroup.com/sabre/>)

Providers of program not listed, who feel their program meet this definition and who would like to be listed should contact BRE Global.

## Additional information

### Security and the impact on equity in communities

The approach to security in buildings has traditionally been defensive in nature and focused on protecting the asset and the building users from external threats. Assets should consider how their approach to crime prevention and security may result in inequitable and exclusionary outcomes and solutions. Assets are encouraged to adopt policies and procedures that not only protect buildings users but contribute to the dignity, safety and security of all people and the wider neighbourhood.



## Management Performance: Land Use and Ecology



### Summary

This category encourages a greater awareness of how the potential ecological value of an asset or site can be enhanced, and the impact that the operation of the asset can have on this ecological value. This enables long-term strategies to be established that will facilitate improvement in this regard.

### Context

Conserving and enhancing the biodiversity and wider natural environment around us is important for life on earth. The natural environment supports the variety of living organisms on the planet as well as the interdependence which exists between them. The United Nations have an SDG related to 'life in land' (Goal 15), with the target to 'integrate ecosystem and biodiversity values into national and local planning and development processes'. Landscape management can have a significant impact on the broader environment that it supports and can have a potentially positive impact on ecological value. It is therefore important to understand the existing value and condition of sites, where possible promote the use of ecological features to enhance and manage the biodiversity of the site.

## Issues

### Lue 03 Ecology report

4 credits

**Aim:**

To encourage organisations to establish the ecological value of their assets and sites and improve the ecological value based on recommendations that have been made by a suitably qualified ecologist (SQE).

**Value:**

Identifies the existing ecological value of the site and its surroundings to allow for the mitigation and management of the possible negative effects on ecology and supports making improvements to the overall ecology and biodiversity where possible..

### Lue 04 Biodiversity management plan

6 credits

**Aim:**

To encourage organisations to develop a biodiversity action plan based on the outcomes of the ecology survey that set targets and is reviewed on a regular basis to maintain and enhance the ecological value of the site. It should be reviewed on a regular basis in order to enable assets to maintain and enhance the ecological value of the site

**Value:**

Gives assurance that the expected benefits and outcomes will be achieved in a sustainable and efficient way during the occupation of the asset.

Assists the asset owners, clients and occupants with managing and improving the ecology and biodiversity of the asset and the immediate site.

Demonstrates compliance with the local and regional statutory requirements (Biodiversity Action Plan).

Highlights improvements in environmental stewardship and awareness, where applicable introducing corporate learning and involvement opportunities. This can also have wider benefits for organisations through enhanced market perceptions.

Supports local, national and international efforts to halt the loss of habitats and biodiversity by promoting net gain where possible.



## Management Performance: Lue 03 Ecology report



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To encourage organisations to establish the ecological value of their assets and sites and improve the ecological value based on recommendations that have been made by a suitably qualified ecologist.

### Question

Has an ecological survey been carried out and reported on within the last 3 years for the communal areas on the site?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, and all of the SQE's minor recommendations for increasing the site's ecological value have been implemented on-site.
4	D.	Yes, and all of the SQE's minor and major recommendations for increasing the site's ecological value have been implemented on-site to make a significant contribution to local biodiversity, given the scope and scale of the asset

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there are no external site areas under the control of the management organisation, they should fully explore other possibilities to enhance site ecology, such as green roofs or green walls. If it can be demonstrated that such other possibilities are not possible then the issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	The survey and recommendations to improve the site should only encompass land / features under the control of the building management such as communal gardens, green walls etc. Private land which is not under the control of the	C, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
	building management does not need to be included (e.g. a private garden / terrace).	
3.	Before any ecological enhancement/creation is recognised, any existing ecological value must be protected and maintained in line with the Suitably Qualified Ecologist's (SQE) recommendations and the mitigation hierarchy.	C, D
4.	An SQE should be independent of the management organisation.	C, D

## Methodology

### Ecology Report Process

A survey and evaluation must be carried out by an SQE (or on their behalf, see below), to determine the asset site's ecological baseline including:

- Current and potential ecological value and condition of the site, and related areas within the zone of influence.
- Direct and indirect risks to current ecological value from the asset
- Capacity and feasibility for enhancement of the ecological value of the site and, where relevant, areas within the zone of influence

The survey and evaluation must be carried out at appropriate time(s) of the year for assessing the habitats and species active likely to be active on the site.

Once established, the ecological baseline should be used to determine the SQE's minor and major recommendations for protection and enhancement of the asset and its site.

The SQE should use their expertise and ecology good and best practice, to determine the appropriate scope of their survey and evaluation. As part of this they should consider any aspects that they think are relevant for the asset being assessed:

#### Survey:

1. Determining the zone of influence for the site including neighbouring land and habitats
2. Current flora, fauna (including permanent and transient species) and habitat characteristics (including but not limited to ecological features in or on built structures)
3. Habitat extent, quality, connectivity and fragmentation
4. Recent and historic site condition
5. Existing management and maintenance levels and arrangements
6. Existing ecological initiatives within the zone of influence
7. Identification of, and consultation with, relevant stakeholders impacted or affected by the site.
8. Local knowledge or sources of information.

#### Evaluation:

1. Current value and condition of the site and the zone of influence in terms of:
  - a. Features including habitats, species, food sources and connectivity

- b. Broader biodiversity and ecosystem services benefits or opportunities
2. Direct and indirect risks to current ecological value:
    - a. Sensitive areas and features on or near the site
    - b. Direct risks including those from, human activity (e.g. construction work), habitat fragmentation, and potentially harmful species
    - c. Indirect risks including water, noise and light pollution
  3. Capacity and feasibility to enhance the ecological value
  4. Habitat restoration and creation potential
  5. Impact of the asset's current management and maintenance practices and any future developments (refurbishments, extensions etc.) such as disturbance to habitats or species using the site or asset.

The report detailing the outcomes of the ecological survey can be written by an ecologist who does not meet the Suitable Qualified Ecologist (SQE) criteria if the report has been reviewed by a SQE who confirms it:

- a) Represents sound industry good practice
- b) Has been written objectively (avoiding biased and exaggerated statements)
- c) Is appropriate given the local site conditions and scope of works proposed.

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	Evidence that there are no external site areas under the control of the management organisation and that other possible ecological enhancements have been considered and ruled out.
All	Copy of ecology survey, including the report.
4	Evidence that the ecology survey was carried out by a competent individual such as: copies of relevant documents, qualifications, CV or industry membership.
2 - 4	Evidence showing the recommendations for protecting or improving the asset and site's ecological value have been implemented, such as: copies of site surveys and management plans for specific biodiverse /ecological important areas on the site.

## Definitions

### Suitably Qualified Ecologist (SQE):

An individual achieving all the following items can be considered to be "suitably qualified" for the purposes of a BREEAM In-Use International assessment:

- a) Holds a degree or equivalent qualification in ecology or in a related subject comprising a significant ecology component.
- b) Is a practising ecologist, with a minimum of three years relevant experience (within the last five years). Such experience must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding of factors affecting ecology in relation to construction and the built environment; including, acting in an advisory capacity

to provide recommendations for ecological protection, enhancement and mitigation measures. The relevant experience must relate to the country that the assessment is being carried out in.

### **Zone of Influence**

Areas of land or water bodies impacted by the site undergoing assessment. These areas can be adjacent to the site or can be areas that are dependent on the site but not physically linked, including areas downstream from a site. Areas within the zone of influence can be negatively affected by changes on an assessment site but they also provide further opportunity to maximise enhancement activities.

### **Asset footprint**

*For buildings only:*

The asset is a building on its own without any associated site attached (for example, a multi-residential building in the city centre). In this case, the asset footprint can be considered to be the area of the asset/building only (typically the ground floor area).

*For buildings located on a site:*

The asset footprint can be taken as the site on which the building is situated. The boundary of the site must be drawn when either:

- Responsibility of management or ownership of the site changes;

**OR**

- If a site includes multiple assets and there is a clear demarcation of the area associated with each asset, then this must be considered to be the site boundary for the asset footprint.

## **Additional information**

### **Mitigation Hierarchy**

The mitigation hierarchy is a method which limits the negative impacts on biodiversity during the asset's life cycle. The main principles are avoidance, mitigation, compensation. for example, if bats are roosting in the roof, measures should be implemented to ensure their ongoing protection and avoidance of disruption in the future.



## Management Performance: Lue 04 Biodiversity management plan



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To encourage organisations to develop, implement and keep under review a biodiversity action plan based on the outcomes of the ecology survey, which sets targets to maintain and enhance the ecological value of the site.

### Question

Is there a biodiversity management plan in place which aligns with local and regional biodiversity action plans and sets specific targets to enhance the ecological value of the site?

Credits	Answer	Select one answer A - D, select all answers from E and F that are applicable
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, plans have been put in place to manage and maintain existing ecological features, which align with local or regional biodiversity action plans
4	D.	Yes, an action plan has been put in place to ensure continued improvement to the ecological value and biodiversity of the site in line with local guidance.
2	E.	Additional credits are awarded if the Management plan has been informed by recommendations made by an SQE and meets the guidance set out in the National / Regional Biodiversity action plans.
1	F.	Where there are outdoor spaces that residents are responsible for, residents should be informed how they can protect and support ecology and biodiversity.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where there are no outdoor spaces that residents are responsible for this answer can be filtered out of the assessment.	F

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	The guidance should be in line with the SQE recommendations in Lue 03 Ecology report and the Biodiversity action plan in Lue 04 Biodiversity management plan. Where LUE 03 and LUE 04 have not been met, guidance should be in line with established sources such as wildlife charities or organisations that may be found online or from liaising with them, where it is relevant to the local area.	F
3.	A Biodiversity management plan should set targets that are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Specific to the asset/site</li> <li>b) Measurable and achievable</li> <li>c) Realistic and time bound</li> </ul>	C, D
4.	The management plan should be informed by the local biodiversity strategies and action plans. If credits have been awarded for Lue 03 Ecology report the management plan should also take into consideration these findings and the recommendations made by the SQE.	C, D
5.	The management plan should be reviewed and updated every 3 years or earlier if there are significant changes to the asset's footprint or the ecological features on-site.	C, D
6.	Organisations responsible for the site's landscape management should either, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Have their own policies that stipulate that the work they undertake will maintain or enhance (if getting extra credit for this) the ecological value on-site in line with the biodiversity management plan.</li> </ul> OR <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b) Have contractual agreements with building management/building owner that stipulate that the work they undertake will maintain or enhance the ecological value on-site in line with the biodiversity management plan.             <p>Progress should be reviewed to ensure ecological value is being maintained or enhanced as appropriate. Where it is not, management plans need to be updated.</p> </li> </ul>	C, D
7.	The management plan should cover (but is not limited to): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Landscaping</li> <li>b) Integrated pest management</li> <li>c) Cleaning of façade, landscaping and hardscaping</li> <li>d) Planting/installation of features to enhance flora and fauna on-site</li> <li>e) Clearly defined and allocated roles and responsibilities.</li> </ul>	C, D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
8.	The management plan for the asset should link to local and regional biodiversity requirements as well as the local biodiversity action plan (BAP), in accordance with the Convention on Biological Diversity where applicable.	C

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Copy of biodiversity plan /strategy
2, 3	Evidence that the plan/strategy was developed by a competent individual such as copies of relevant documents, qualifications, CV or industry membership.

## Definitions

### Biodiversity action plan (BAP):

An international programme brought about at the Convention on Biological Diversity in 1992. The programme encourages nations to develop and adopt a strategy which will protect and restore biological systems around the world by addressing threats to native species and habitats in any given area. The action plans should include four major steps:

- a) A survey of all species and habitats located within the area relating to the BAP.
- b) An assessment of the conservation status of all the species and habitats
- c) Targets for the conservation and creation of the biodiversity within the given area
- d) An established budget, timeline and partnership where necessary for implementing the enhancement and protection of the local ecosystem.

### Integrated Pest Management (IPM):

A method of controlling pests by prevention, monitoring, and control. This method of pest control offers the opportunity to eliminate or drastically reduce the use of pesticides, and to minimise the toxicity of and exposure to any products which are used.

### Suitably Qualified Ecologist (SQE):

An individual achieving all the following items can be considered to be suitably qualified for the purposes of a BREEAM In-Use International assessment:

- a) Holds a degree or equivalent qualification in ecology or in a related subject comprising a significant ecology component.
- b) Is a practising ecologist, with a minimum of three years relevant experience (within the last five years). Such experience must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding of factors affecting ecology in relation to construction and the built environment; including, acting in an advisory capacity to provide recommendations for ecological protection, enhancement and mitigation measures. The relevant experience must relate to the country that the assessment is being carried out in.

## Additional information

### Other information

Convention on Biological Diversity – For more information regarding this please visit the official website:  
<http://www.cbd.int/convention/>



## Management Performance: Pollution



### Summary

The pollution category addresses the prevention and control of pollution associated with an asset location and use. This facilitates a reduction in impact on surrounding communities and environment, arising from flooding and emissions to air, land and water.

Pollution source reduction is a proactive, and ultimately more cost effective and desirable, process than focusing on pollution treatment and disposal. It reduces the financial, societal and environmental costs from building operations. In addition to reducing the risk of significant financial and reputational implications in the event of a pollution incident, addressing pollution can help address the inequities that are currently present in our communities and provide a healthy environment for all demographic and economic groups, including those that are less advantaged or part of a vulnerable population.

### Context

The United Nations have made 'good health and well-being' one of their SDGs, with an aim to 'substantially reduce the number of deaths and illnesses from hazardous chemicals and air, water and soil pollution and contamination' by 2030.

#### Light pollution

The external lighting used by buildings can have a detrimental impact on the use and enjoyment of neighbouring properties, and on the mental and physical wellbeing of individuals in them. It also has a significant and often detrimental impact on local wildlife.

#### Refrigerants

The typical refrigerants used in building cooling systems are major greenhouse gases that are many times more potent than carbon dioxide in their contribution to global warming and climate change. Although, released in much smaller quantities they are, nevertheless, a significant contributor to increasing global temperatures. As such, they are the focus of increasingly strict regulatory controls internationally. Worldwide agreements (such as the 1992 United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC)) and its extension, the Kyoto Protocol, commits signatories to reducing greenhouse gas emissions and banning the most damaging gases. The agreements seek to shift use to low impact refrigerants over time and so provide a timescale for the phasing out of more potent refrigerants. Because the use of the gases is so prolific actions taken to limit their use are vital.

BREEAM supports this agenda and stimulates a more rapid change market transformation by creating market value for assets with reduced impact refrigerants by limiting the volume or weight of gases used, their potential impact, and for specifying systems which detect and control leakage of gas to the atmosphere.

Refrigerant leaks impact both the environment and financial performance of an asset, increasing the running time of the equipment and potentially damaging components of the system. Whilst many countries have regulatory systems in place that require leak testing and repair for systems of a certain size during regular maintenance, knowing as soon as possible when a leak has developed is key to minimising the environmental impacts, managing operating costs and maximising the life cycle of the installed equipment.

## Issues

<b>Pol 06</b>	<b>Reduction of nighttime light pollution</b>	<b>2 credits</b>
		<b>+1 Exemplary</b>

**Aim:**

To ensure that external lighting is concentrated in the appropriate areas and that upward lighting is minimised, thereby reducing unnecessary light pollution and nuisance to residents and neighbouring assets.

**Value:**

Minimises nuisance to neighbouring properties due to lighting.

Maintains an adequate level of safety and security lighting on the site.

Reduces energy use by designing coverage and control systems that are appropriate for the development.

<b>Pol 07</b>	<b>Inspection of watercourse pollution prevention features</b>	<b>2 credits</b>
---------------	--	------------------

**Aim:**

To maintain the effectiveness of any features installed to prevent watercourse pollution.

**Value:**

Reduces the risk of damage to local watercourses and potential breaches of environmental law.

<b>Pol 08</b>	<b>Refrigerant replacement</b>	<b>2 credits</b>
---------------	--------------------------------	------------------

**Aim:**

To reduce the impact of refrigerants on the environment.

**Value:**

Reduces the overall contribution to climate change.

Reduces the cost of regulatory compliance by encouraging on-going and proactive maintenance.

<b>Pol 09</b>	<b>Contamination from invasive plant species</b>	<b>2 credits</b>
---------------	--	------------------

**Aim:**

To ensure that there are no invasive plant species on the asset's site.

**Value:**

Reduces the spread of invasive plant species that can be expensive to remove once established.

Reduces risk to human health, property and environment.

<b>Pol 10</b>	<b>Response to pollution incidents</b>	-
---------------	--	---

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.



## Management Performance: Pol 06 Reduction of nighttime light pollution



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All projects

### Aim

To ensure that external lighting is concentrated in the appropriate areas and that upward lighting is minimised, thereby reducing unnecessary light pollution and nuisance to residents and neighbouring assets.

### Question

Has an assessment been performed that demonstrates that external lighting does not result in light pollution at night?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option, Answer E can only be selected if Answer C has been selected
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	Yes, qualitative assessment performed
2	D.	Exterior lighting is not provided, and it is not required from a safety perspective
Exemplary	E.	Yes, quantitative assessment performed by a lighting professional

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	For qualitative assessments where external lighting is present: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All external lighting is aimed downwards, to avoid upward sky glow.</li> <li>All external lighting is aimed away from residents' internal habitable areas, neighbouring buildings or open spaces, or has screens or baffles to prevent light spill to them.</li> <li>There are no illuminated signs.</li> <li>Lighting is automatically controlled to be switched off or dimmed to a much lower level between 23:00 and 07:00 (the curfew period).</li> </ol>	C

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
2.	A lighting professional confirms that external obtrusive lighting has been eliminated through effective design that removes the need for external lighting without adversely affecting the safety and security of the site and the residents.	D
3.	<p>For quantitative assessments where external lighting is present, a lighting professional confirms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) All external lighting (except for safety and security lighting) complies with the pre-curfew limitations in Table 33 and can be automatically switched off between 23:00 and 07:00 (the curfew period).</li> <li>b) Illuminated signs, where present, comply with the maximum luminance (<math>\text{cd}/\text{m}^2</math>) in Table 33.</li> <li>c) If safety or security lighting is installed and is used between 23:00 and 07:00, it complies with the post-curfew limitations in Table 33 (e.g. by using an automatic switch to reduce the lighting levels at 23:00 or earlier).</li> </ul>	E
4.	Assessment of illuminance or luminous intensity is not required if all luminaires are cut-off types and angled so that light in potentially obtrusive directions is blocked. Assessment of upward light ratio is not required if all luminaires are cut-off types delivering downward light only.	C - E
5.	Flush stud lights used for safety purposes in vehicle manoeuvring areas may be excluded from the assessment.	C - E
6.	All types of illuminated sign must meet the criteria, both self-illuminated and those illuminated by reflection from other sources.	C - E
7.	For the purposes of this issue, external lighting includes both lighting mounted externally, and lighting mounted inside an asset that is primarily intended to enhance its external appearance or light external spaces after dark.	C - E

## Methodology

### Quantitative assessment by lighting professional

The direct measurement of upward light ratio (ULR), vertical illuminance and luminous intensity may not be possible due to issues with access to luminaires or to neighbouring properties. Consequently, the lighting professional may use their professional judgement to determine compliance with the requirements in Table 33, e.g. visual assessment to estimate the proportion of ULR, or where access to sensitive receptors is not possible, luminous intensity measurements could be made from accessible locations in the direction of the view of luminaires as seen from sensitive receptors. Where lighting design documentation is available from when the lighting was installed, this may be used to demonstrate compliance with the assessment issue criteria.

## Checklists and Tables

Table 33: Obtrusive light limitations for exterior lighting installations and illuminated signs

Zone (see Table 34)	Maximum luminaire upward light ratio (ULR) / %	Maximum vertical illuminance on nearby properties' windows ( $E_v$ ) / lux		Maximum luminous intensity emitted by luminaire (I) / cd		Maximum average surface luminance of building façade (L)* / cd/m <sup>2</sup>	Maximum average surface luminance of signs (L)* / cd/m <sup>2</sup>
		Pre-curfew	Post- curfew	Pre- curfew	Post- curfew		
E0	0	0	0	0	0	<0.1	<0.1
E1	0	2	0 <sup>#</sup>	2,500	0	<0.1	50
E2	2.5	5	1	7,500	500	5	400
E3	5.0	10	2	10,000	1,000	10	800
E4	15	25	5	20,000	2,500	25	1000

\* The values apply to both pre- and post-curfew, except in Zones 0 and 1 when the values shall be zero post-curfew. The values for signs do not apply to signs for traffic control purposes.

# Up to 1 lux for public road lighting.

Table 34: Environmental lighting zones

Zone	Lighting Environment	Surrounding	Examples
E0	Dark	Protected	UNESCO Starlight Reserves, IDA Dark Sky Parks
E1	Intrinsically dark	Natural	Relatively uninhabited rural areas, e.g. national parks
E2	Low district brightness	Rural	Sparingly inhabited rural areas
E3	Medium district brightness	Suburban	Well inhabited rural and urban settlements
E4	High district brightness	Urban	Town and city centres and other commercial areas

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Night-time lighting levels report or any other relevant study.
All	Photographic evidence confirming that external luminaires are designed to restrict upward light and light spill.
All	Confirmation that lighting is switched off during the curfew period.



## Management Performance: Pol 07 Inspection of watercourse pollution prevention features



Credits

No Minimum Standard

Applicability: All Projects

### Aim

To maintain the effectiveness of any features installed to prevent watercourse pollution.

### Question

Are bunded areas and light-liquid separators effectively maintained?

Credits	Answer	Select all answers that apply
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
1	C.	Yes, the maintenance policy covers the inspection and maintenance of bunded areas
1	D.	Yes, the maintenance policy covers light-liquid separators and detailed inspection and maintenance is carried out

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where no bunded areas are required (as no liquids requiring bunded storage are stored on-site) or the asset does not require light liquid separators the associated credits can be filtered out of the assessment.	All

### Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.

Criteria	Evidence requirement
All	Copy of maintenance policy highlighting the sections relevant to bunding and light liquid separators
All	Copy of logbook or inspection schedule.

## Definitions

**Bund:**

A structure made of an impermeable material which forms a barrier to retain liquids.

**Light- liquid separators:**

A part of a surface water drainage system, into which potentially contaminated wastewater flows. Light, free-floating liquids (such as oil) are separated from the wastewater by means of gravity or coalescence and retained.



## Management Performance: Pol 08 Refrigerant replacement



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To reduce the impact of refrigerants on the environment.

### Question

Is a strategy and timetable to replace refrigerants with low environmental impact alternatives in place?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	No
2	C.	No, low environmental impact refrigerants (GWP $\leq 10$ ) already in use.
2	D.	Yes, all refrigerants will be replaced with low environmental impact alternatives (GWP $\leq 10$ )

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	<b>Filtering</b> Where no refrigerants are used or only small (refrigerant charge in each system is $\leq 5\text{kg}$ ) hermetic systems are installed in the asset, this issue can be filtered out of the assessment.	All
2.	The strategy needs to cover: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Equipment containing refrigerants which are to be replaced</li> <li>Which low environmental impact refrigerants will be used to replace the existing refrigerants?</li> <li>A reasonable timescale over which this is to be delivered</li> </ol>	D
3.	This issue only applies to refrigerants used in equipment that is installed in the building, mainly for comfort cooling and heating (e.g. heat pumps).	D

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
4.	A list of typical refrigerants with a low GWP can be found in Table 24 in the Checklist and Tables section of issue Pol 04 Global warming potential of refrigerants.	C, D

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
1	Statement from the building manager indicating that the asset does not contain any systems that contain refrigerants or confirmation that the total charge is ≤5kg in any systems that are present.
2	Copy of the strategy/ objectives relating to replacing refrigerants



## Management Performance: Pol 09 Contamination from invasive plant species



Credits

No Minimum Standard

**Applicability:** All Projects

### Aim

To ensure that there are no invasive plant species on the asset's site.

### Question

Are there any non-native invasive plant species growing on the site?

Credits	Answer	Select a single answer option
0	A.	Question not answered
0	B.	Yes
2	C.	No
2	D.	Yes. Mitigation measures are in place to control the spread or eliminate the species.

### Assessment criteria

Criterion	Assessment criteria	Applicable Answer
1.	A suitably qualified ecologist (SQE) has conducted an ecologist assessment of the site. The report categorises the vegetation on-site and confirms whether non-native plant species are present.	C, D
2.	There are non-native invasive plant species on the site. Mitigation measures are in place to control or eliminate the species, as advised by the SQE who conducted the ecological assessment of the site.	D

## Evidence

Criteria	Evidence requirement
-	The evidence below is not exhaustive, please also refer to the 'BREEAM evidential requirements' section in the scope of the Guidance for appropriate evidence types which can be used to demonstrate compliance.
All	Report(s) from contaminated land professional(s).
All	Written confirmation from the asset or site owner that further intrusive investigation and remedial works, as appropriate, have been planned.

## Definitions

### Suitably Qualified Ecologist (SQE):

See the definition in Lue 02

### Non-native invasive plant species

These are species that do not originate or occur naturally in a particular habitat and whose presence causes ecological, environmental, and/ or economic harm. The SQE's professional judgement is needed to confirm what plant species can be categorised as the above. E.g. Japanese knotweed and Giant Hogweed would typically be categorised as invasive species in the UK.



## Management Performance: Pol 10 Response to pollution incidents



Credits

No Minimum Standard

### Applicability: n/a

This issue is not applicable to BREEAM In-Use International Residential scheme.

